

HƯỚNG DẪN ÔN THI VÀO LỚP 10 THPT 2024-2025

LỜI NÓI ĐẦU

- Hiện nay, kì thi tuyển sinh vào lớp 10 Trung học phổ thông được thực hiện phổ biến ở nhiều tỉnh thành trong cả nước. Để phục vụ yêu cầu ôn tập môn tiếng Anh cho kì thi này, Tôi tổng hợp biên soạn cuốn sách Tổng ôn tập thi vào lớp 10 môn tiếng Anh năm học 2024-2025.

- Cuốn sách ôn tập thi vào lớp 10 môn Tiếng Anh năm học 2024-2025 nhằm giúp học sinh Trung học cơ sở có thêm tài liệu để luyện tập nâng cao kiến thức và chuẩn bị tốt cho các kì thi và kiểm tra, đặc biệt là kì thi tuyển sinh vào lớp 10 tới.

- Các bài luyện đa dạng về ngữ âm, ngữ pháp, từ vựng, giao tiếp, đọc hiểu và viết theo nội dung chương trình và sách giáo khoa tiếng Anh THCS hiện hành (Chủ yếu là Chương trình môn tiếng Anh hệ 10 năm). Chủ đề và nội dung các bài luyện phong phú, hấp dẫn, phù hợp với lứa tuổi học sinh. Các đề luyện sẽ giúp học sinh củng cố kiến thức đã học, nâng cao kiến thức và kĩ năng ngôn ngữ, và chuẩn bị tốt cho các kì thi và kiểm tra, đặc biệt là kì thi tuyển sinh vào lớp 10 THPT.

- Tôi hi vọng cuốn sách sẽ là một tài liệu học tập thú vị, hiệu quả và giúp các em học sinh THCS chuẩn bị tốt nhất cho kì thi sắp tới.

- Mặc dù đã vô cùng tâm huyết khi biên soạn nhưng không thể không mất phải những thiếu sót mong sự góp ý chân thành từ quý thầy cô, các em học sinh.

- Hãy gửi phản hồi về hòm thư : bdteacher@gmail.com hoặc [Zalo 0982.826817](tel:0982.826817)

MỤC LỤC

Part		Page
PHONETICS (NGỮ ÂM)		
1	Pronunciation	5
2	Stress	8
GRAMMAR (NGỮ PHÁP)		
1	Verb tenses	10
2	Subject-verb concord	15
3	Modal verbs	18
4	Verb forms	22
5	Tag questions	26
6	Active & passive	29
7	Conditional sentence	34
8	Subjunctive mood	38
9	Reported speech	42
10	Relative clauses	47
11	Phrases & clauses	52
12	Comparison	55
13	Quantifiers	59
14	Conjunctions	61
15	Articles	66
16	Prepositions	68
VOCABULARIES (TỪ VỰNG)		
1	Word formation	72
2	Phrasal verbs	75
3	Communicative exchanges	80
4	Word-choice	86
5	Closest & opposite meaning	95
READING (ĐỌC HIỂU)		
1	Reading comprehension	97
2	Gap-filling	108
WRITING (VIẾT)		
1	Sentence writing	113
REVIEW (ÔN TẬP)		
1	Tổng ôn viết lại câu đồng nghĩa	121
2	Tổng ôn tìm lỗi sai	122
PRACTICE TEST (CÁC ĐỀ THI THỬ)		
1	🌟 Bộ đề kết hợp trắc nghiệm + tự luận 40 câu (3 bài test) Test 1 Test 2 Test 3	123
2	🌟 Bộ đề trắc nghiệm 40 câu (3 bài test) Test 4	132

	Test 5 Test 6	
3	🔹 Bộ đề trắc nghiệm 50 câu (3 bài test) Test 7 Test 8 Test 9	142

I. PRONUNCIATION (PHÁT ÂM)

* KNOWLEDGE (KIẾN THỨC)

1. Quy tắc phát âm của các chữ cái phụ âm và phụ âm cuối

★ Một số chữ cái phụ âm thường gặp

Chữ cái phụ âm	Cách phát âm	Ví dụ
c	/k/	<u>c</u> lose, <u>c</u> onfide
	/s/	<u>c</u> ertify, <u>c</u> ycle
	/ʃ/	spe <u>c</u> ial, oce <u>an</u>
d	/d/	<u>d</u> ramatic, <u>d</u> emand
	/dʒ/	grad <u>u</u> al, edu <u>c</u> ate
g	/g/	<u>g</u> uess, regul <u>ar</u>
	/dʒ/	<u>g</u> erm, orig <u>in</u>
	/ʒ/	beig <u>e</u> , garag <u>e</u>
n	/n/	<u>n</u> eck, fun <u>n</u>
	/ŋ/	unc <u>l</u> e, dr <u>in</u> k
s	/s/	<u>s</u> ecret, optim <u>is</u> t
	/z/	ros <u>e</u> , res <u>u</u> me
	/ʃ/	<u>s</u> ugar, ens <u>u</u> re
	/ʒ/	usu <u>al</u> ly, occas <u>io</u> n
t	/t/	<u>t</u> utor, pret <u>e</u> nce
	/ʃ/	opt <u>io</u> n, init <u>ia</u> l
	/tʃ/	cult <u>u</u> re, quest <u>io</u> n
x	/gz/	ex <u>i</u> st, ex <u>h</u> ibit
	/ks/	box, mix <u>t</u> ure
	/kʃ/	an <u>x</u> ious, lux <u>u</u> ry

★ Một số nhóm chữ cái phụ âm thường gặp

Nhóm chữ cái phụ âm	Cách phát âm	Ví dụ
qu	/kw/	<u>q</u> ueue, requ <u>ir</u> e
ch	/k/	<u>ch</u> emist, mech <u>an</u> ic
	/tʃ/	<u>ch</u> eck, bunch <u>u</u>
	/ʃ/	mach <u>in</u> e, parach <u>u</u> te
sh	/ʃ/	<u>sh</u> ock, sm <u>ash</u>
th	/θ/	<u>th</u> eme, dept <u>h</u>
	/ð/	<u>th</u> us, feath <u>er</u>
gh/ ph	/f/	roug <u>h</u> , laugh <u>t</u> er, <u>ph</u> oto, parag <u>ra</u> ph

★ Quy tắc phát âm đuôi "s, -es/ -ed"

2. Cách phát âm đuôi -s, -es

	Quy tắc
/s/	Thời phong kiến phương tây Ex: cloths <u>s</u> , beliefs <u>s</u> , books <u>s</u> , cups <u>s</u> , cats <u>s</u>
/iz/	Sáng chiều zò xô số (s, se, ce) Ex: crashes <u>es</u> , watches <u>es</u> , buzzes <u>es</u> , boxes <u>es</u> , buses <u>es</u> , focuses <u>es</u> , resources <u>es</u> , bridges <u>es</u>
/z/	Ex: robs <u>s</u> , bags <u>s</u> , pools <u>s</u> , costumes <u>s</u> , begins <u>s</u> , floors <u>s</u> , leaves <u>s</u>

3. Cách phát âm đuôi -ed

	Quy tắc
/id/	t, d : tình đầu Ex: wanted <u>ed</u> , ended <u>ed</u>
	Ngoại lệ: Đuôi "ed" trong các tính từ sau được đọc là /id/ naked <u>ed</u> aged <u>ed</u> learned <u>ed</u> wicked <u>ed</u> dogged <u>ed</u> blessed <u>ed</u> beloved <u>ed</u> crooked <u>ed</u>
/t/	k, x, s (ce, se), p, ch, sh, f, gh (khi xuống sông phải coi chừng cô ấy té ghe) Ex: worked <u>ed</u> , kissed <u>ed</u> , faxed <u>ed</u> , watched <u>ed</u> , laughed <u>ed</u> , faced <u>ed</u> , helped <u>ed</u> , roughed <u>ed</u> , washed <u>ed</u> => s hoặc -ss thì luôn đúng, nhưng -se có thể đọc /t/ hoặc /d/ tùy theo từ.
/d/	Các âm còn lại Ex: played <u>ed</u> , loved <u>ed</u> , happened <u>ed</u>

3. Quy tắc phát âm các từ chứa âm câm

Một số chữ cái trong một số từ bao gồm phụ âm và nguyên âm không được phát âm thành tiếng được gọi là âm câm (silent sounds). Sau đây là một số âm câm thường gặp:

Chữ cái – Trường hợp thường gặp	Ví dụ
b đứng cuối trong một số từ (thường đi sau m) b đứng trước t	climb <u>b</u> , dumb <u>b</u> , comb <u>b</u> doubt <u>b</u> , debt <u>b</u>
c đứng trước k c đứng sau s trong một số từ	snack <u>c</u> , dock <u>c</u> scene <u>c</u> , muscle <u>c</u> , science <u>c</u>
d trong một số từ	handsome <u>d</u> , Wednesday <u>d</u>
h trong một số từ	hour <u>h</u> , exhausted <u>h</u>
gh trong một số từ (đặc biệt là sau i)	weigh <u>gh</u> , sight <u>gh</u>
k đứng trước n	know <u>k</u> , knee <u>k</u> , knife <u>k</u>
l trong một số từ	half <u>l</u> , could <u>l</u>
n đứng sau m	autumn <u>n</u> , condemn <u>n</u>
p đứng đầu một từ, theo sau là một phụ âm và một số trường hợp khác	psychology <u>p</u> , receipt <u>p</u>
r đứng trước một phụ âm khác hoặc đứng cuối từ đó	card <u>r</u> , park <u>r</u> , farm <u>r</u> , burn <u>r</u> , neighbour <u>r</u> , volunteer <u>r</u>
t trong một số từ	listen <u>t</u> , castle <u>t</u>
w đứng trước r hoặc h trong một số từ	wreck <u>w</u> , who <u>w</u>

❁ PRACTICE (LUYỆN TẬP)

Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others

- A. sweater B. slideshow C. sure D. science
- A. document B. stroll C. buffalo D. remote
- A. average B. wave C. pavement D. engage
- A. system B. specify C. unscrew D. insurance
- A. washed B. considered C. booked D. hoped

6. A. stream B. leather C. cream D. dream
7. A. intermediate B. immediate C. medium D. medicine
8. A. bury B. hurry C. hungry D. thunder
9. A. planted B. worked C. wanted D. needed
10. A. beach B. clean C. instead D. leave
11. A. informed B. impressed C. installed D. admired
12. A. planet B. fashion C. travel D. nature
13. A. hut B. done C. donate D. tunnel
14. A. chemistry B. mechanic C. character D. parachute
15. A. reduced B. realized C. arrived D. compared
16. A. breathe B. decrease C. leather D. beach
17. A. mow B. low C. show D. cow
18. A. speaks B. learns C. sends D. knows
19. A. invite B. faint C. patient D. victim
20. A. award B. candidate C. understand D. examine

II. STRESS (TRỌNG ÂM)

❖ KNOWLEDGE (KIẾN THỨC)

I. Trọng âm với từ có 2 âm tiết

- Đối với động từ có 2 âm tiết, trọng âm thường rơi vào âm tiết thứ hai.

Example:

Verb	Pronunciation
invite	/in'veit/
appeal	/ə'pi:l/
support	/sə'pɔ:rt/
surprise	/sə'praiz/
prepare	/pri'peə(r)/
decide	/di'said/
prefer	/pri'fɜ:(r)/
advise	/əd'vaiz/

Exception: Động từ có hai âm tiết nhưng âm tiết thứ hai chứa nguyên âm /i/, /ə/, /əʊ/: trọng âm thường rơi vào âm tiết thứ nhất.

Verb	Pronunciation
borrow	/'bɒrəʊ/
loosen	/lu:s(ə)n/
tighten	'taɪt(ə)n/
enter	/'entə(r)/
offer	/'ɒfə(r)/
finish	/'fɪnɪʃ/
widen	/'waɪd(ə)n/

- Đối với danh từ, tính từ và trạng từ có 2 âm tiết, trọng âm thường rơi vào âm tiết thứ nhất.

Word (N, Adj, Adv)	Pronunciation
people	/'pi:pl/
mother	/mʌðə(r)/
student	/'stju:dnt/
ready	/'redi/
happy	'hæpi/
easy	/'i:zi/
seldom	/'seldəm/
often	/'ɒftən/

II. Trọng âm với từ có 3 âm tiết

- Trọng âm thường rơi vào âm tiết thứ ba tính từ âm tiết cuối trở ngược lên. Chúng ta có thể dùng phương pháp đếm ngược.

Ví dụ: **Fa**-mi-ly / 1<=2<=3

Chúng ta đếm ngược từ 3->2->1, trọng âm sẽ rơi vào âm được đếm số 1 (trong ví dụ là 'FA')

Example:

Word	Pronunciation
------	---------------

family	/ˈfæməli/
internet	/ˈɪntənet/
dedicate	/ˈdedikeɪt/
satisfy	/ˈsætɪsfaɪ/
qualify	/ˈkwɒlɪfaɪ/

• Đối với các từ tận cùng bằng: **ian, ic, ience, ient, ial, ual, al, eous, ion, iar**, trọng âm thường rơi vào âm tiết ngay phía trước chúng.

Example:

Word	Pronunciation
athletic	/æθˈletɪk/
essential	/ɪˈsenʃl/
familiar	/fəˈmɪliə(r)/
delicious	/dɪˈlɪʃəs/
physician	/fɪˈzɪʃn/

• Đối với các từ tận cùng bằng: **ee, eer, ese, ier, ette, oo, esque**, trọng âm thường rơi vào âm tiết chứa các đuôi này.

Example:

Word	Pronunciation
refugee	/ˈrefjuːdʒiː/
engineer	/ˌendʒɪˈniə(r)/
kangaroo	/ˌkæŋgəˈruː/
volunteer	/ˌvɒlənˈtiə(r)/
Vietnamese	/ˌviːetnəˈmiːz/

❁ PRACTICE (LUYỆN TẬP)

Choose the word whose stress is different from the others

- | | | | |
|------------------|---------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. A. below | B. bathroom | C. body | D. city |
| 2. A. country | B. early | C. husband | D. cartoon |
| 3. A. river | B. paper | C. lesson | D. collect |
| 4. A. sometimes | B. locate | C. student | D. tired |
| 5. A. under | B. very | C. behave | D. yellow |
| 6. A. bamboo | B. winter | C. weather | D. after |
| 7. A. improve | B. study | C. sugar | D. summer |
| 8. A. window | B. table | C. sorry | D. repair |
| 9. A. ready | B. player | C. person | D. believe |
| 10. A. become | B. shopping | C. travel | D. website |
| 11. A. economy | B. suggestion | C. detective | D. interest |
| 12. A. prefer | B. borrow | C. forget | D. pollute |
| 13. A. forecast | B. predict | C. depend | D. prepare |
| 14. A. national | B. possible | C. necessary | D. convenient |
| 15. A. encourage | B. adventure | C. understand | D. remember |
| 16. A. begin | B. better | C. player | D. doctor |
| 17. A. teacher | B. picture | C. behind | D. mother |
| 18. A. many | B. only | C. music | D. today |
| 19. A. operate | B. immersion | C. breadwinner | D. visit |
| 20. A. tender | B. applied | C. rubber | D. sprinkle |

I. VERB TENSES (THÌ ĐỘNG TỪ)

❖ KNOWLEDGE (KIẾN THỨC)

I. PRESENT TENSES

1. Hiện tại đơn (simple present).

Công thức	Cách dùng/Từ nhận biết
Thành lập câu khẳng định. ❖ Động từ TO BE. (+): S + am/is/are..... ❖ Động từ thường. (+): S + Vs/es/V(nguyên mẫu) Thành lập phủ định và nghi vấn. ❖ V(do/does) (-): S + do/does + not + V(bare) (?): Do/does + S + V (bare)? ❖ Be (am/ is/ are) (-): S + am/is/ are + not +..... (?): Am/is/are + S +.....?	Cách dùng - diễn tả hành động thường xuyên xảy ra. - diễn tả thói quen. - diễn tả thời gian biểu, lịch trình, thông báo. - diễn tả sự thật, chân lí. - diễn tả nghề nghiệp, sở thích, nguồn gốc, bình phẩm. Từ nhận biết - seldom/ rarely/ hardly - sometimes/ occasionally - often/ usually/ frequently - always/ constantly- ever- never- every

2. Hiện tại tiếp diễn (present continuous)

Công thức/Từ nhận biết	Cách dùng
S+ am/is/are + V-ing Thành lập phủ định và nghi vấn (-): S + am/is/are + not + V-ing (?): Am/ is/ are+ S + V-ing? Từ nhận biết - now- at the moment- at present- right now- look /hear (!)	Cách dùng - diễn tả hành động đang xảy ra tại thời điểm nói. - diễn tả hành động sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai (có kế hoạch từ trước). - diễn tả sự thay đổi của thói quen. - diễn tả sự ca thán, phàn nàn.

3. Hiện tại hoàn thành (present perfect)

Công thức/Từ nhận biết	Cách dùng
S + have/ has + V(pp) (Have: I/ số nhiều - Has: số ít) Thành lập phủ định và nghi vấn (-): S+ have/ has + not + V(pp) (?): Have/ Has + S + V(pp)? Từ nhận biết - for - since - ever - never - so far - recently - lately - before (đứng cuối câu)	Cách dùng - diễn tả hành động xảy ra trong quá khứ nhưng không rõ thời gian. - diễn tả hành động lặp đi lặp lại nhiều lần trong quá khứ. - diễn tả hành động xảy ra trong quá khứ nhưng để lại dấu hiệu hoặc hậu quả ở hiện tại. - diễn tả những trải nghiệm. - diễn tả những hành động xảy ra trong quá khứ

- up to now/ up to present/ until now - yet - just - already	nhưng kéo dài tới hiện tại và vẫn còn có khả năng sẽ tiếp diễn trong tương lai.
---	---

II. PAST TENSES

1. Quá khứ đơn (simple past)

Công thức	Cách dùng/Từ nhận biết
Thành lập câu khẳng định. ❖ Động từ TO BE. (+): S + was/were ❖ Động từ thường. (+): S + V3/ed Thành lập phủ định và nghi vấn ❖ V(did) (-): S + did+ not+ V(bare) (?): Did + S+V (bare) +? ❖ Be (was/were) (-): S+ was/were + not +..... (?): Was/were + S+?	Cách dùng - diễn tả hành động đã xảy ra và đã chấm dứt trong quá khứ, không còn liên quan tới hiện tại. - diễn tả hành động xảy ra nối tiếp nhau trong quá khứ. - diễn tả hồi ức, kỉ niệm. Từ nhận biết - ago- last- yesterday- in + một mốc thời gian trong quá khứ (in 2000...)

2. Quá khứ tiếp diễn (past continuous)

Công thức/ Từ nhận biết	Cách dùng
S + was/were + Ving Thành lập phủ định và nghi vấn (-): S+ was/ were + not + V-ing (?): Was/ were + S+ V-ing? Từ nhận biết - giờ + trạng từ quá khứ (at 3 pm yesterday...) - at this/that time + trạng từ quá khứ (at this time last week....)	Cách dùng - diễn tả hành động đang xảy ra tại một thời điểm xác định trong quá khứ. - diễn tả hành động đang xảy ra thì có hành động khác xen vào, hành động nào xảy ra trước chia thì quá khứ tiếp diễn, hành động nào xảy ra sau chia thì quá khứ đơn.

3. Quá khứ hoàn thành (past perfect)

THÌ QUÁ KHỨ HOÀN THÀNH	
Công thức/Từ nhận biết	Cách dùng
S + had + V(pp) Thành lập phủ định và nghi vấn (-): S + had + not + V(pp) (?): Had + s + V(pp)? Từ nhận biết - before/by the time (trước chia quá khứ hoàn thành, sau chia quá khứ đơn). - after (trước chia quá khứ đơn, sau chia quá khứ hoàn thành).	Cách dùng - diễn tả những hành động xảy ra và hoàn thành trước hành động khác trong quá khứ.

III. FUTURE TENSES

1. Tương lai đơn (simple future)

Công thức/Từ nhận biết	Cách dùng
S + will + V(bare) Thành lập phủ định và nghi vấn (-): S + will + not + V(bare) (?): Will + S + V (bare)?	Cách dùng - diễn tả những hành động sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai. - diễn tả những dự đoán.

Từ nhận biết - tomorrow- next- soon- in + một khoảng thời gian (in an hour...)	- diễn tả lời hứa.
--	--------------------

2. Tương lai tiếp diễn (future continuous)

Công thức/Từ nhận biết	Cách dùng
<p>S + will + be + Ving</p> <p>Thành lập phủ định và nghi vấn</p> <p>(-): S + will + not + be + Ving</p> <p>(?): Will + S + be + Ving?</p> <p>Từ nhận biết</p> <p>- giờ + trạng từ tương lai (at 3 pm tomorrow...)</p> <p>- at this/that time + trạng từ tương lai (at this time next week....)</p>	<p>Cách dùng</p> <p>- diễn tả hành động đang diễn ra vào một thời điểm cụ thể trong tương lai.</p> <p>- diễn tả hành động sẽ đang xảy ra trong tương lai thì có hành động khác xen vào, hành động nào xảy ra trước chia thì tương lai tiếp diễn, hành động nào xảy ra sau chia thì hiện tại đơn.</p>

3. Tương lai hoàn thành (future perfect)

Công thức	Cách dùng
<p>S + will + have + V(pp)</p> <p>Thành lập phủ định và nghi vấn</p> <p>(-): S + will + not + have + V(pp)</p> <p>(?): Will + s + have + V (pp)?</p>	<p>Cách dùng</p> <p>- diễn tả hành động sẽ được hoàn thành trước khi một hành động khác xảy đến.</p>

IV. KIẾN THỨC BỔ TRỢ

Một số cấu trúc viết lại câu sử dụng thì Quá khứ đơn và Hiện tại hoàn thành

It is + thời gian + since + S + last + Vpast
 = The last time S + Vpast + was + thời gian(ago)
 = S + last + Vpast + thời gian(ago)
 = S + haven't/hasn't + PII + for/ since + thời gian

Examples: It is 4 years since I last went to Japan.

- = The last time I went to Japan was 4 years ago.
- = I last went to Japan 4 years ago.
- = I haven't gone to Japan for 4 years.

S + started/ began + Ving/ to V+ thời gian(ago)
 = S + have/has + PII + for/ since + thời gian

Examples: David started working here last year.

- = David has worked here since last year.

S + have/has never + PII + before
 = S + haven't/hasn't + PII + before
 = This is the first time + S + have/has + PII

Examples: We have never played golf before.

- = We haven't played golf before.
- = This is the first time we have played golf

This/ S + so sánh nhất + N + S + have/has ever + PII

= S + have/has never + PII + such (a/an) + N(s) + like this(as) + S + (before)

Examples: This is the most interesting novel I have ever read.
= I have never read such an interesting novel like this before.

When + did + S + V?

= How long is it since + S + Vpast?

Examples: When did you buy this car?
= How long is it since you bought this car?

❁ **PRACTICE (LUYỆN TẬP)**

Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. He has been selling motorbikes _____.
A. ten years ago B. since ten years C. for ten years ago D. for ten years
2. Christopher Columbus _____ American more than 500 years ago.
A. discovered B. has discovered
C. had discovered D. had been discovering
3. Since _____, I have heard nothing from him.
A. he had left B. he left C. he has left D. he was left
4. The man got out of the car, _____ round to the back and opened the book.
A. walking B. walked C. walks D. walk
5. Her father _____ when she was a small girl.
A. dies B. died C. has died D. had died
6. Her husband _____ unemployed since they _____ to the countryside.
A. was / moved B. was / have moved
C. has been / moved D. has been/have moved
7. He fell down when he _____ towards the church.
A. run B. runs C. was running D. had run
8. While they were laying the table, he _____ to the radio.
A. was listening B. listened C. has listened D. is listening
9. Henry _____ into the restaurant when the writer was having dinner.
A. was going B. went C. has gone D. did go
10. By the age of 25, he _____ two famous novels.
A. wrote B. writes C. has written D. had written
11. He always _____ for a walk in the evening.
A. go B. is going C. goes D. going
12. I'll come and see you before I _____ for the States.
A. leave B. will leave C. have left D. shall leave
13. He will take the dog out for a walk as soon as he _____ dinner.
A. finish B. finishes C. will finish D. finishing
14. Her brother _____ in Canada at present.
A. working B. works C. is working D. work

15. Tom and Mary _____ for Vietnam tomorrow.
 A. leave B. are leaving C. leaving D. are left
16. We _____ Dorothy since last Saturday.
 A. don't see B. haven't seen C. didn't see D. hadn't seen
17. It is blowing so hard. We _____ such a terrible storm before.
 A. have never known B. have never been knowing
 C. never know D. had never known
18. I have never played badminton before. This is the first time I _____ to play.
 A. try B. tried C. have tried D. am trying
19. Ask her to come and see me when she _____ her work.
 A. finish B. has finished C. finished D. finishing
20. Our industrial output _____ from \$2 million in 2002 to \$4 million this year.
 A. rises B. has risen C. was rising D. rose

Correct the mistakes in the following sentences

1. Daisy will sitting on the plane at 5 a.m tomorrow.
 A B C D
2. What will you doing at 11 p.m tonight?
 A B C D
3. By this time tomorrow, they will visit Paris with their friends.
 A B C D
4. By 2030, the number of schools in our city will have double.
 A B C D
5. Some people are believing that there is life on the Moon.
 A B C D
6. We will have walked to the bus stop at this time next morning.
 A B C D
7. My father and I go skiing almost every day last winter.
 A B C D
8. What time has the train to Hai Phong leave?
 A B C D
9. Someone has been smoking in this room because it is dirty.
 A B C D
10. Look! Her eyes are red. She had been crying.
 A B C D

Rewrite the following sentences using the words given.

1. It is a long time since we last met.
 ⇨ We haven't _____
2. When did you have this computer?
 ⇨ How long _____
3. My nephew James has never drunk beer before.
 ⇨ This _____
4. This is the first time he visited Ha Long Bay.
 ⇨ He has _____
5. She started working here last year.
 ⇨ She has _____
6. We began eating lunch when it started to rain.
 ⇨ We have _____

7. I last had my hair cut when she left me.
 ↳ I haven't _____
8. The last time he met me was 5 months ago.
 ↳ He hasn't _____
9. When did they start opening this shopping center?
 ↳ How _____
10. I haven't been to the zoo for over the year.
 ↳ The last time _____

II. SUBJECT-VERB CONCORD (HÒA HỢP S-V)

❁ KNOWLEDGE (KIẾN THỨC)

Một số quy tắc chung

V (số ít)	Chủ ngữ là danh từ và cụm danh từ số ít.
	Chủ ngữ là các đại lượng chỉ thời gian, khoảng cách, tiền bạc, hay sự đo lường.
	Chủ ngữ là các đại từ bất định: someone, anything, nothing, eve-ryone, another...
	Chủ ngữ là mệnh đề danh từ Ex: All I want to do now is to sleep.
	Chủ ngữ bắt đầu bằng "to infinitive" hoặc "V-ing".
	Chủ ngữ bắt đầu bằng cụm từ " Many a ".
	Chủ ngữ bắt đầu là một phân số có tử số là 1. Ex: 1/2 is larger than 1/3.
	Chủ ngữ là một số danh từ đặc biệt có hình thức số nhiều: môn học (Physics, Maths), môn thể thao (billards, athletics...), tin tức (news), các loại bệnh (rabies, measles...), tên 1 số quốc gia và tổ chức (UN, the United States, the Philipines...), loài động vật (ants, elephants...)
	Chủ ngữ bắt đầu bằng: Most of/All of/Plenty of/ + N (không đếm được/số ít).
	Chủ ngữ bắt đầu bằng " The number of + N (số nhiều) ".
	Chủ ngữ bắt đầu bằng " None of + N (số nhiều)/ No + N (số ít) ".
	Chủ ngữ bắt đầu bằng N ₁ (số ít) of N ₂ .
	Chủ ngữ là cụm danh từ chỉ nhóm động vật (số ít) mang nghĩa " bầy, đàn ": flock of birds/sheep, school of fish, pride of lion, pack of dogs, herd of cattle...
	A large amount/A great deal + N (không đếm được/ số ít).
	Neither (of)/Either of + N (số nhiều) Ex: - Neither restaurants is expensive. - Either of them works in this company.
Chủ ngữ là một tựa đề. Ex: " Chi pheo " is a famous work of Nam Cao.	
Chủ ngữ bắt đầu bằng " A pair of + N (số nhiều) ". Ex: A pair of pants is in the drawer.	
Chủ ngữ là danh từ và cụm danh từ số nhiều. Ex: Oranges are rich in vitamin C	
Một số danh từ kết thúc bằng "s" nhưng dùng số nhiều: people, police, cattle, children, geese, mice...	

	<p>Ex: People are searching for something to eat.</p> <p>Hai chủ ngữ nối nhau bằng “and” và có quan hệ đẳng lập Ex: Jane and Mary are my best friends. Tuy nhiên, nếu 2 danh từ cùng chỉ một người, một bộ phận hoặc 1 món ăn... thì động từ chia ở số ít. (Lưu ý: không có “the” ở trước danh từ sau “and”.) Ex: Bread and butter is their daily food.</p>
V (số nhiều)	<p>Cấu trúc “both N₁ and N₂” Ex: Both Betty and Joan are cooking for their dinner party.</p>
	<p>Chủ ngữ là 1 đại từ: several, both, many, few, all, some + N (số nhiều). Ex: Several students are absent.</p>
	<p>Chủ ngữ là “The + adj”, chỉ một tập hợp người Ex: The poor living here need help.</p>
	<p>Chủ ngữ bắt đầu là một phân số có tử số từ 2 trở lên. Ex: 2/5 are smaller than 1/2.</p>
	<p>Các danh từ luôn dùng dạng số nhiều (thường đi theo cặp): trouser, eyeglasses, jeans, tweezers, shorts, pliers, pants, tongs... Ex: The pants are in the drawer.</p>
	<p>Chủ ngữ bắt đầu bằng: Most of/All of/ Plenty of/Some of/Majority of/ The last of/ One of/Half of/Part of/The rest of/Percentage of/A lot of/Lots of/A third of/Minority of + N (số nhiều). Ex: Most of people in the factory are male.</p>
	<p>Chủ ngữ bắt đầu bằng “A number of + N (số nhiều)”. Ex: A number of students going to class decrease.</p>
	<p>Chủ ngữ bắt đầu bằng “No + N (số nhiều)”. Ex: No people understand what he says.</p>
	<p>Chủ ngữ bắt đầu bằng “N₁ (số nhiều) of N₂”. Ex: The studies of how living things work are called philosophy.</p>
	<p>Chủ ngữ là cụm danh từ chỉ nhóm động vật (số nhiều) mang nghĩa “bầy, đàn”: flocks of birds/sheep; schools of fish; prides of lion; packs of dogs; herds of cattle... Ex: Flocks of birds are flying to its destination.</p>
V chia theo chủ ngữ đầu tiên	<p>Chủ ngữ được nối với nhau bởi các liên từ: “as long as, as well as, with, together with, along with, in addition to, accompanied by”. Ex: - She, along with her classmates, is going to university this year. - Mrs. Smith together with her sons is going abroad.</p>
V chia theo các danh từ thứ 2	<p>Either ...or... Neither ... nor... Not only ... but also... ... or... ... nor... Not... but...</p>

 **PRACTICE (LUYỆN TẬP)**

❖ Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. All the books on the shelf _____ to me.
A. belong B. belongs C. belonging D. is belonging
2. The trousers you bought for me _____ me.
A. don't fit B. doesn't fit C. fits D. fit not
3. Mumps _____ usually caught by children.
A. are B. was C. is D. were
4. The United States _____ between Canada and Mexico.
A. lying B. lies C. lain D. lie
5. Physics _____ us understand the natural laws.
A. helps B. help C. have helped D. helped
6. The police _____ the robber.
A. were arrested B. has arrested C. have arrested D. was arresting
7. Either you or he _____ wrong.
A. are B. were C. have been D. is
8. The doctor with the nurses _____ exhausted after the operation.
A. were B. was C. have been D. are being
9. Ninety percent of the work _____ been done.
A. is B. are C. has D. have
10. Those who _____ to go with me, please raise your hand.
A. want B. wants C. wanting D. are wanting
11. Salt and water _____ to wash the wound
A. is used B. are used C. was used D. were used
12. The news _____ bad last night.
A. were B. was C. has D. has been
13. Three-fifths of the police _____ in the school near the town.
A. has trained B. have trained C. has been trained D. have been trained
14. _____ not only you but also he going to Japan?
A. Are B. Is C. Were D. Was
15. Five miles _____ not very far.
A. is B. are C. were D. have been
16. Neither his parents nor his teacher _____ satisfied with his result.
A. are being B. were C. is D. are
17. Writing a lot of letters _____ her tired.
A. makes B. make C. have made D. are making
18. _____ everybody ready to start now?
A. Are being B. Is being C. Is D. Are
19. None of the butter in the fridge _____ good.
A. is being B. is C. have been D. are
20. Miss White _____ her parents is going to pay a visit to the Great Wall.
A. and B. both C. as well as D. or

Identify the one underlined word or phrase A, B, C or D that must be changed in order to make the sentence correct.

1. One hundreds eight thousand miles is the speed of light
A B C D

2. The guest of honor, along with his wife and children, were sitting at the first table when we had a party yesterday.
A B C D
3. The audience was enjoying every minute of the performance.
A B C D
4. All the books on the top shelf belongs to me.
A B C D
5. Five thousand pounds were stolen from the bank.
A B C D
6. Neither his parents nor his teacher are satisfied with his result when he was at high school.
A B C D
7. Working provide people with personal satisfaction as well as money.
A B C D
8. Either the doctor or the nurses takes care of changing the patients' bandages.
A B C D
9. Every student who majors in English are ready to participate in the contest.
A B C D
10. The guest of honour, along with his wife and children, were sitting at the first table when we had a party yesterday.
A B C D

III. MODAL VERBS (ĐỘNG TỪ KHUYẾT THIẾU)

❁ KNOWLEDGE (KIẾN THỨC)

Những động từ khuyết thiếu thường dùng

CAN	BE ABLE TO
"be able to" và "can" để diễn tả một khả năng hay sự có thể. Tuy nhiên, "can" không có dạng tương lai nên ta sử dụng "will be able to"	
Dùng để diễn tả những điều có thể làm do khả năng, <i>năng khiếu</i> của bản thân Ví dụ: I <u>can</u> swim. (= I have the ability to swim).	Dùng để diễn tả những điều có thể làm do <i>cố gắng, xoay xở</i> mới làm được Ví dụ: In spite of his broken leg, he <u>was able to</u> get out of the burning house.
MUST	HAVE TO
Cả "must" và "have to" đều có nghĩa là "cần phải/ phải"	
Diễn tả sự cần thiết phải làm gì nhưng là do chủ quan (tự bản thân nhận thức thấy) Ví dụ: I <u>must</u> phone my sister. (=> I am aware that this is necessary).	Diễn tả sự cần thiết phải làm gì nhưng là do <i>khách quan</i> (nội quy, quy định...) Ví dụ: Students <u>have to</u> go to school on time. (=> It's school's regulation).
NEED (cần)	
"Need" vừa là động từ thường, vừa là động từ khuyết thiếu	

<p>Need là động từ thường</p> <p>- Nó phải dùng trợ động từ khi thành lập câu phủ định và nghi vấn</p> <p>- Động từ theo sau nó phải dùng dạng “to infinitive”</p> <p>Ví dụ: She <u>needs to see</u> you. She <u>doesn't need</u> to see you.</p>	<p>Need là động từ khuyết thiếu</p> <p>- Khi là động từ khuyết thiếu NEED chỉ có hình thức hiện tại và có đầy đủ đặc tính của một động từ khuyết thiếu.</p> <p>Ví dụ: <u>Need he work</u> so hard? You <u>needn't go</u> yet, need you?</p>
MUSTN'T	NEEDN'T
<p>MUSTN'T (không được phép): mang ý cấm đoán.</p> <p>Ví dụ: You <u>mustn't drink</u> it. It is poisonous.</p>	<p>NEEDN'T (không cần thiết): mang ý nghĩa không bắt buộc.</p> <p>Ví dụ: You <u>needn't hurry</u>. We still have a lot time to do it.</p>
SHOULD	OUGHT TO
<p>“should” và “ought to” đều có nghĩa là “nên” dùng để đưa ra lời khuyên, ý kiến</p>	
<p>Chỉ sự bắt buộc hay bốn phần nhưng ở mức độ nhẹ hơn “Must”.</p> <p>Ví dụ: - You <u>should send</u> this report by 8th September.</p>	<p>Chỉ sự bắt buộc. Mạnh hơn “Should” nhưng chưa bằng “Must”.</p> <p>Ví dụ: She really <u>ought to apologize</u>.</p>
SHALL	WILL
<p>“shall” và “will” đều có nghĩa là “sẽ” dùng để đưa ra một quyết định tại thời điểm nói. “will” có thể đi được với tất cả các ngôi, còn “shall” chỉ được dùng với ngôi I/ we.</p>	
<p>- Dùng để xin ý kiến, đưa gợi ý.</p> <p>Ví dụ: Where <u>shall we eat</u> tonight?</p> <p>- Người ta dùng cấu trúc “Shall I...” để đề nghị giúp ai.</p> <p>Ví dụ: <u>Shall I carry</u> the luggage for you?</p>	<p>- Diễn đạt, dự đoán sự việc xảy ra trong tương lai.</p> <p>Ví dụ: Tomorrow <u>will be</u> sunny.</p> <p>- Người ta dùng cấu trúc “Will you...” để đề nghị ai giúp mình.</p> <p>Ví dụ: <u>Will you give</u> me her address?</p>
MAY	MIGHT
<p>“may” và “might” đều có nghĩa là “có lẽ” dùng để diễn tả điều gì có thể xảy ra nhưng không chắc. “Might” là quá khứ của “may”</p>	
<p>- Diễn tả điều gì có thể xảy ra ở hiện tại.</p>	<p>- Diễn tả điều gì có thể xảy ra ở quá khứ.</p> <p>- “Might” được dùng không phải là quá khứ của “may” với mức độ “có thể” thấp hơn “may”.</p>
CAN	COULD
<p>“can” và “could” được dùng trong câu hỏi đề nghị, xin phép, yêu cầu.</p>	
<p>Diễn tả khả năng hiện tại hoặc tương lai mà một người có thể làm được gì, hoặc một sự việc có thể xảy ra.</p> <p>Ví dụ: I <u>can swim</u>./ It <u>can rain</u>.</p>	<p>Diễn tả khả năng xảy ra trong quá khứ.</p> <p>Ví dụ: My brother <u>could speak</u> English when he was five.</p>

❁ PRACTICE (LUYỆN TẬP)

Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. The children _____ spend too much time playing computer games.
A. mustn't B. ought to not C. shouldn't D. Both B and C
2. In case you're suffered from the injury, you _____ see the doctor today.
A. had better B. must C. ought D. have better
3. We _____ stop when traffic lights are red.
A. might B. should C. must D. can
4. Remember to bring your raincoat. It _____ rain.
A. should B. might C. need D. must
5. I _____ find my own way there. You _____ wait for me.
A. should / can't B. have to / must C. can / needn't D. might / mustn't
6. All students _____ wear uniforms at school because it is a rule.
A. should B. have to C. ought to D. must
7. You _____ finish your homework before you go to bed.
A. must B. have to C. should D. ought to
8. This drink isn't beneficial for health. You _____ drink it too much.
A. should B. ought to not C. ought not to D. mustn't
9. This warning sign indicates that you _____ step on the grass.
A. shouldn't B. mustn't C. don't have to D. ought not to
10. I think you _____ do exercise regularly in order to keep your body in good shape.
A. must B. should C. ought to D. Both B and C
11. I will lend you some money, but you _____ pay it back to me next week.
A. should B. have to C. must D. mustn't
12. Hoa _____ feed the cats because her mother has done it already.
A. has to B. doesn't have to C. must D. Both A and C
13. Those audiences _____ show their tickets before entering the concert hall.
A. have to B. must C. ought to D. don't have to
14. You're having a stomachache. You had better _____ to the doctor.
A. to go B. went C. go D. going
15. You _____ ring the bell because I have a key.
A. mustn't B. needn't C. couldn't D. should
16. It's a hospital. You _____ smoke here.
A. mustn't B. needn't C. may not D. don't have to
17. Water park is free for kids under 6 years old, so you _____ pay money for your son.
A. have to B. mustn't C. should D. don't have to
18. You look totally exhausted. You _____ take a rest instead of working overtime.
A. should B. ought C. must D. has better
19. Anyone _____ have a passport, even a visa when travelling all around the world.
A. ought to B. must C. should D. has to
20. In the peak season, travellers _____ book their accommodation in advance.
A. have to B. must C. should D. ought

Correct the mistakes in the following sentences

1. You needn't solve a problem until you identify it correctly.
A B C D
2. Be careful with the knife! It's very sharp, you must cut your finger.
A B C D

3. Pam can't have cooked since we ordered some pizzas.
A B C D
4. They said that you shouldn't use your mobile phone at the cinema.
A B C D
5. Henry, will I borrow your camera tonight?
A B C D
6. You should be careful when using chemicals.
A B C D
7. She hasn't eaten anything since yesterday. She can be very hungry.
A B C D
8. His teacher was very angry with him. He mustn't have said that to her.
A B C D
9. Children should obey their parents and teachers.
A B C D
10. You might try the cheese souffle It's really good.
A B C D

IV. VERB FORMS (DẠNG CỦA ĐỘNG TỪ)

❁ KNOWLEDGE (KIẾN THỨC)

1. To infinitive (to V)

- Động từ nguyên mẫu có to được dùng làm:

+ Chủ ngữ của câu

Ex: to become a teacher is my dream.

+ Bổ ngữ cho chủ ngữ

Ex: What she likes is to swim in the sea and then to lie on the sand

+ Tân ngữ của động từ

Ex: It was a boring holiday, so we decided to take a trip to Singapore.

+ Tân ngữ của tính từ

Ex: I'm very happy to go to school after Tet holiday.

Những động từ theo sau là "to V"

STT	Cấu trúc	Nghĩa
1	Decide to V	Quyết định làm gì
2	Want to V	Muốn làm gì
3	Agree to V	Đồng ý làm gì
4	Expect to V	Mong muốn làm gì
5	Fail to V	Thất bại làm gì
6	Hope to V	Hy vọng làm gì
7	Promise to V	Hứa làm gì
8	Manage to V	Xoay sở làm gì
9	Prepare to V	Chuẩn bị làm gì
10	Would like to V	Muốn, thích làm gì
11	Pretend to V	Giả vờ làm gì
12	Plan to V	Có kế hoạch làm gì
13	Ask to V	Yêu cầu làm gì
14	Afford to V	Có đủ khả năng làm gì
15	Choose to V	Chọn làm gì
16	Intend to V	Dự định làm gì
17	Refuse to V	Từ chối làm gì
18	Attempt to V	Nỗ lực làm gì
19	Offer to V	Đề nghị làm gì
20	Vow to V	Thề làm gì

- Trong các cấu trúc:

+ Mất bao lâu để làm gì:

It take/ took + O + số tiền/ thời gian + to V

Ex: It takes me 30 minutes to go to school.

+ Cấu trúc như thế nào để làm gì đó (nhấn mạnh: adj + to V)

It + be + adj + (for sb) + to V: thật ... (cho ai) để.....

Ex: It is very useful for you to learn a foreign language.

+ Chỉ mục đích

Ex: I go to market to buy something for my birthday party.

2. Bare infinitive (V nguyên thể)

- Dùng sau các động từ khuyết thiếu : can, may, should,....

Ex: I can speak English and France.

- Dùng sau các động từ: had better, would rather, had sooner.

Ex: You had better study harder.

- Dùng sau các động từ : let/ make

Ex: He made me cry.

3. Gerund (Ving): danh động từ:

- Danh động từ được dùng làm:

+ Chủ ngữ của câu

Ex: Skiing is my favorite sport.

+ Bổ ngữ của động từ

Ex: My hobby is collecting coins.

+ Tân ngữ của động từ

Ex: I like travelling.

- Những động từ đi với V ing:

STT	Cấu trúc	Nghĩa
1	Can't help/ can't stand/ can't bear	Không thể chịu đựng được
2	enjoy/ fancy Ving	Thích làm gì
3	Delay/ postpone/ put off Ving	Trì hoãn làm gì
4	Hate Ving	Ghét làm gì
5	Admit Ving	Thú nhận làm gì
6	Avoid Ving	Tránh làm gì
7	Deny Ving	Từ chối làm gì
8	Mind Ving	Ngại/ phiền làm gì
9	Miss Ving	Lỡ làm gì
10	Risk Ving	Liều làm gì
11	Suggest Ving	Gợi ý làm gì
12	Be busy Ving	Bận làm gì
13	Feel like Ving	Thích/ muốn làm gì
14	Tolerate Ving	Chịu đựng làm gì
15	Recall Ving	Nhớ lại đã làm gì
16	Keep Ving	Tiếp tục làm gì
17	Resist Ving	Phản đối làm gì
18	Practice Ving	Thực hành làm gì
19	Look forward to Ving	Mong đợi làm gì
20	Imagine Ving	Tưởng tượng làm gì
21	Involve Ving	Có liên quan làm gì
22	There is no point in Ving = It is no use/ good Ving	Không đáng làm gì
23	Have difficulty in Ving	Gặp khó khăn trong việc làm gì
24	Get/ be accustomed to Ving	Quen làm gì
25	Detest Ving	Ghét làm gì

- Trong cấu trúc:

S + spend/ spent + thời gian + Ving – dành bao lâu để làm gì

Ex: I spend 2 hours learning Math every day.

- Sau các giới từ: on/ for

Ex: I have to finish my homework before going out.

4. Một số trường hợp đặc biệt:

Allow/ permit/ advise/ recommend + O + to V // Ving

Ex: He allowed me to use his pencil.

He didn't allow smoking in this room.

Ex: **S + have + O (chỉ người) + V...= S + get + O (chỉ người) + to V : bảo ai làm gì đó**

I have my sister do housework.

I get my sister to do housework

- Các động từ chỉ tri giác: hear, sound, smell, feel, watch, notice, see, listen, find,...

+ O + Ving: thấy ai đó đang làm gì.

+ O + V : thấy ai làm gì đó

Ex: I saw her get off the bus.

I smell something burning in the kitchen

- Một số trường hợp khác nhau về nghĩa giữa to V và Ving:

STT	Cấu trúc	Nghĩa
1	Remember + to V Remember + Ving	Nhớ phải làm gì Nhớ .là đã làm gì
2	Forget + to V Forget + Ving	Quên phải làm gì Quên đã làm gì
3	Try + to V Try + Ving	Cố gắng làm gì Thử làm gì
4	Mean + to V Mean + ving	Dự định làm gì Có nghĩa là
5	Stop + to V Stop + Ving	Dừng để làm gì Dừng hẳn làm gì

❁ PRACTICE (LUYỆN TẬP)

Choose the best answer A, B , C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

- We regret _____ you that you haven't been selected for the post of senior manager.
A. informing B. inform C. informed D. to inform
- Ted managed _____ my mind.
A. to change B. changing C. having changed D. change
- I can't afford _____ a new car.
A. buying B. to buy C. bought D. buy
- I finally finished _____ at 7:00 pm and served dinner.
A. cooking B. being cooked C. to cook D. to be cooked
- The president agreed _____ the Agreement.
A. to sign B. sign C. signing D. to have signed
- Would you mind _____ the door?
A. close B. have closed C. closing D. to close
- I want _____ because I enjoy _____ people and _____ new places.

- A. travel/meet/see
C. travelling/meeting/to see
- B. to travel/meeting/seeing
D. to travel/to meet/to see
8. She wanted _____ home but the boss made her _____ until she finished _____ those contracts.
A. to go/stay/typing
C. to go/staying/type
- B. going/to stay/to type
D. go/stay/typed
9. We decided _____ at home.
A. to stay
B. stay
- C. staying
D. having stayed
10. Frank tends _____ too much.
A. to have drunk
B. drinking
- C. drink
D. to drink
11. They spent two months _____ their house.
A. renew
B. renewed
- C. renewing
D. to renew
12. It takes three hours _____ to Paris.
A. getting
B. get
- C. got
D. to get
13. I suggested _____ a suit and tie when we went to the interview.
A. to wear
B. wear
- C. worn
D. wearing
14. She admitted _____ the money.
A. stolen
B. be stealing
- C. have stolen
D. having stolen
15. Your shoes need _____.
A. to be cleaned
B. cleaning
- C. to clean
D. A&B are correct
16. We should avoid _____ our environment.
A. to pollute
B. polluted
- C. polluting
D. being polluted
17. I prefer _____ to _____.
A. walking-cycle
B. walk-cycle
- C. walking-cycling
D. to walk-cycling
18. The captain chose _____ with his ship.
A. die
B. to die
- C. to have died
D. dying
19. Vietnam failed _____ Tiger Cup 2004!
A. winning
B. win
- C. to win
D. to have won
20. _____ natural resources is of great importance.
A. Be preserve
B. Preserving
- C. Preserved
D. Presevered

Correct the mistakes in the following sentences

1. There is no point in to invite him ; he won't come to the party.
A B C D
2. Do you fancy to have fish for dinner tonight?
A B C D
3. Some people are forced leaving their home since they can't pay for their mortgages.
A B C D
4. I'm afraid the sweater isn't big enough for me to be wear.
A B C D
5. To argue with your parents won't make thing work.
A B C D
6. Adam promised to be sent us a postcard from London, but he didn't.
A B C D
7. It takes 2 hours flying to Singapore
A B C D
8. Would you like your parents coming home at once?
A B C D

9. Don't forget turn off the light before leaving the classroom.

A B C D

10. My sister practices speaks English with her friends every day.

A B C D

Rewrite the following sentences using the word in brackets.

1. Living in a foreign country was not easy. (It)
↪ _____
2. The coffee was very hot. I couldn't drink it. (too)
↪ _____
3. I haven't got much money. I cannot go on holiday this year. (enough)
↪ _____
4. My father prefer listening to the radio to watching TV. (rather)
↪ _____
5. She washed her hair before she went out. (going)
↪ _____
6. Henry had better not buy too many trainers. He spent a lot of money. (spent)
↪ _____
7. Teaching children at this age is extremely difficult. (It)
↪ _____
8. My brother is very strong. He can lift a horse. (enough)
↪ _____
9. That car is quite expensive . I cannot buy it . (too)
↪ _____
10. My son prefer playing chess than flying kites. (would)
↪ _____

V. TAG QUESTIONS (CÂU HỎI ĐUÔI)

✿ KNOWLEDGE (KIẾN THỨC)

Câu hỏi đuôi (tag question) là dạng câu hỏi rất hay được sử dụng trong tiếng Anh, đặc biệt là tiếng Anh giao tiếp. Câu hỏi đuôi là câu hỏi ngắn ở cuối câu trần thuật. Câu hỏi này được dùng khi người nói muốn xác minh thông tin là đúng hay không hoặc khi khuyến khích một sự hồi đáp từ phía người nghe.

Ví dụ: She is learning English now, isn't she? (Cô ấy đang học tiếng Anh bây giờ phải không?)

Công thức chung: S + V +....., trợ động từ + S(ĐẠI TỬ)?

-Nếu câu nói trước dấu phẩy là khẳng định thì câu hỏi đuôi là phủ định và ngược lại.

Dưới đây là bảng tóm tắt cách thành lập câu hỏi đuôi.

Statement	Tag questions
I am.....	aren't I ?
I am not.....	am I ?
Động từ khiếm khuyết S + can/could/should/will.....	Can't/couldn't/shouldn't/won't.....+ S ?
Động từ thường S + V1....., S + Vs/es....., S + V2/ed.....,	Sử dụng trợ động từ: Do/does/did Don't + S? Doesn't + S? Didn't + S?

S + have/has/had + V3/ed.....,	Haven't/hasn't/hadn't + S ?
S + is/are/was/were.....,	Isn't/aren't/wasn't/weren't + S?
S + used to + V.....,	Didn't + S ?
S + 'd better/had better + V.....,	Hadn't + S?
S + 'd rather/would rather/would like + V.....,	Would + S?
There + is/are/was/were.....,	Isn't/aren't/wasn't/weren't + S?
Let's + V.....,	Shall we+?
Chủ từ là : No one/nobody/anyone/anybody/ everyone/everybody/someone/somebody+ they ?
Chủ từ là: nothing/anything/something/ Everything.....+ it?
Chủ từ là this/that.....+ it?
Chủ từ là these/those.....+ they ?
Trong câu có các từ phủ định: no/none/without Neither/hardly/seldom/rarely/little/never/few.	Câu hỏi đuôi khẳng định không có N'T
S + ought to.....,	Shouldn't + S?
Câu mệnh lệnh	Will you?

=> Cấu trúc: " I + think/believe/suppose/...." + mệnh đề phụ thì ta dùng động từ trong mệnh đề phụ để xác định động từ cho câu hỏi đuôi.

Ex: I think she will meet him, won't she?

Cũng mẫu cấu trúc này nhưng nếu chủ từ không phải là "I" thì dùng động từ chính trong câu (think/believe/suppose/...) để xác định động từ cho câu hỏi đuôi.

Ex: She thinks he will come, doesn't she?

❁ PRACTICE (LUYỆN TẬP)

Choose the best answer A, B , C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

- Lucy can speak Chinese, _____?
A. can she B. can't she C. she can D. she can't
- They won't go to the hairdresser's tomorrow, _____?
A. won't they B. will they C. they will D. they won't
- Your brother goes to school on foot, - _____?
A. does he B. he does C. doesn't he D. he doesn't
- Let's sing a funny song, _____?
A. don't we B. don't you C. shall we D. shan't we
- Your baby is very lovely, _____?
A. is he B. isn't he C. is it D. isn't it
- These books aren't yours, _____?
A. are these B. aren't these C. are they D. aren't they
- You don't have a ticket to the game, _____?
A. have you B. don't you C. haven't you D. do you
- Tom knows Alice, _____?
A. doesn't he B. is he C. does he D. isn't he
- Sally turned her report, _____?
A. didn't she B. did she C. hadn't she D. didn't Sally
- We should call Rita, _____?
A. should we B. shouldn't we C. shall we D. should not we

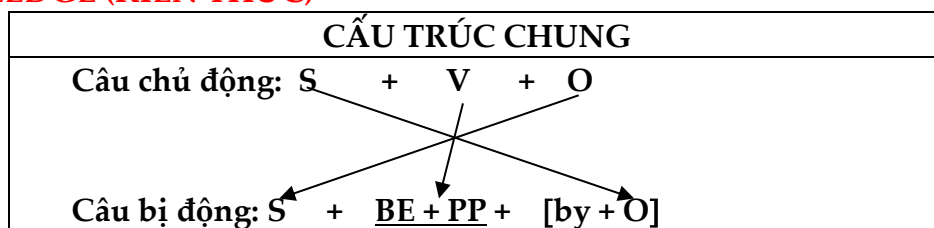
11. He hardly knows anything about that scandal, _____?
 A. hasn't he B. knows he C. doesn't he D. does he
12. You've never been in Italy, _____?
 A. have you B. haven't you C. been you D. had you
13. Everybody likes beauty, _____?
 A. doesn't he B. do they C. don't they D. does he
14. I'm your father, _____?
 A. aren't I B. am I not C. are you D. am I
15. This is the second time she's been here, _____?
 A. isn't this B. isn't it C. has she D. hasn't she
16. Come into the kitchen, _____?
 A. do you B. will you C. won't you D. don't you
17. Let's go out for dinner tonight, _____?
 A. let we B. shall we C. shan't we D. let's not
18. You think that she told lies, _____?
 A. do you B. don't you C. did she D. didn't she
19. I believe that we can do it, _____?
 A. do I B. don't I C. can we D. can't we
20. All of us have to hand in the assignments on time, _____?
 A. have we B. haven't us C. do we D. don't we

Choose the underlined part among A, B, C or D that needs correcting.

1. David and Peter love playing football in their free time, do they?
 A B C D
2. Peter will help you with your homework, shan't he?
 A B C D
3. Nobody helped her with her work, do they?
 A B C D
4. You won't be leaving for another hour, won't you?
 A B C D
5. They enjoy watching soccer on television, do they?
 A B C D
6. There are ten children playing in the yard near her house, aren't they?
 A B C D
7. Don't tell my secrets to anyone, do you?
 A B C D
8. It has been a long time since we talked to John, isn't it?
 A B C D
9. There's a new Orient restaurant in town, isn't it?
 A B C D
10. They hardly went to the beach with their close friends, didn't they?
 A B C D

VI. ACTIVE & PASSIVE (CHỦ ĐỘNG & BỊ ĐỘNG)

❖ KNOWLEDGE (KIẾN THỨC)



Cần chú ý khi chuyển từ chủ động sang bị động

Động từ BE trong câu bị động phải được chia cùng thì động từ với câu chủ động.

Trong câu chủ động, nếu chủ ngữ S là I, you, we, they, he, she, it someone,

everybody, people... (chủ thể không rõ ràng) thì khi chuyển sang câu bị động không dùng [by + O]

[by + O] đứng sau trạng từ chỉ tần suất, địa điểm; đứng trước trạng từ chỉ thời gian.

1. Bị động các thì trong tiếng anh (Bảng quy đổi)

TENSES	ACTIVE (Chủ động)	PASSIVE (Bị động)
1. Present simple (HTĐ)	S + V(inf)/ V-s/es + O	S + am/is /are + PP (V3/ V-ed)
2. Present Continuous (HTTD)	S + am/ is/ are + v-ing + O	S+ am/is / are/ + being + V3/ V-ed
3. Present perfect (HTHT)	S + have/ has + V3/ V-ed + O	S + have/ has + been + V3/ V-ed
4. Past simple (QKĐ)	S + V2/ V-ed + O	S + was/ were + V3/ V-ed
5. Past continuous (QKTD)	S + was/ were + V- ing + O	S + was/ were + being + V3/ V-ed
6. Past perfect (QKHT)	S + had + PP + O	S + had + been + V3/ V-ed
7. Future simple (TLĐ)	S + will/ shall + V(inf) + O	S + will/ shall + be + V3/ V-ed
8. Near future (TLG)	S+ am/ is/ are going to+ V(inf)	S+am/is/are going to be + V3/ V-ed
9. Modal verbs (ĐT KK)	S + can/could/may...+ V(inf)	S + can/could/may ...+ be + V3/ V-ed

2. Các dạng bị động đặc biệt

❖ Causative Forms: (Thế sai khiến)

S + have+ Sb + V + O

➤ S + have + O + PP + by Sb

Ex: I have Peter to fix my bike

↳ I have my bike fixed by Peter

S + get + Sb + to V + O

➤ S + have/ get + to + PP + by Sb

Ex: I got Peter fix my bike

↳ I got/ had my bike fixed by Peter.

S + employ/ hire + Sb + to V + O

➤ S + have + O + PP + by Sb

Ex: I will hire Peter to fix my bike.

↳ I will have my bike fixed by Peter.

❖ Verbs with two subjects (Động từ đi kèm 2 tân ngữ)

S + V + O₁ + O₂

Ex: The student gave me a book

► (C1) S + be + V3/ed + O₂ + (by + O) ⇨ I was given a book by the student.

► (C2) S + be + V3/ed + to/for + O₁ + (by + O) ⇨ A book was given to me by the student

- Cả tân ngữ chỉ người và chỉ vật đều có thể được dùng làm chủ ngữ ở câu bị động.

- Một số động từ thường đi kèm 2 tân ngữ. give, buy, make, send, get, write, tell, teach, show, etc....

* Verbs follow by V (Động từ theo sau bởi V nguyên thể)

make, hear, help, see, etc...+ V

► (be) made, heard, helped, seen, + etc... + to V

Ex: John made me leave

⇨ I was made to leave. (by John)

* Let + V (Cho phép)

S + let + O + V

► S + BE + ALLOWED + to V

Ex: They didn't let me go out.

⇨ I wasn't allowed to go out.

* Verbs with prepositions (Động từ đi kèm giới từ)

* Câu chủ động, động từ đi kèm với giới từ (V + O + prep)

* Câu bị động, giới từ phải đứng ngay phía sau động từ.(V + prep)

Ex: A car has knocked me down.

⇨ I have been knocked me down by a car.

* Complex sentences (Câu phức)

* Câu phức ở dạng chủ động gồm 2 mệnh đề và những động từ chỉ quan điểm: think, say, believe, consider, expect, find, hope, know, report, understand, etc...

Cấu trúc chủ động: S1 + V1 (think, say,) that S2 + V2

Câu phức ở dạng bị động có 2 cách chuyển.

1- Cách chung:

It + be + PP (V1) + that S2 + V2

2- Nếu động từ ở 2 mệnh đề **tương đương** thì động từ

S2 + be + PP (V1) + to V (Nếu V2 là hiện tại đơn hoặc tương lai đơn)

3- Nếu động từ ở 2 mệnh đề **không tương đương** thì động từ

S2 + be + PP (V1) + to have PP (Nếu V2 là quá khứ đơn hoặc hoàn thành)

Cách nhận biết tương đương/ không tương đương thì động từ.

★ Tương đương:

HTĐ – HTĐ/HTTD/ TLĐ/ TLG

QKĐ- QKĐ/ QKTD

★ Không tương đương:

HTĐ – QKĐ/ HTHT

QKĐ- QKHT/ TLĐ

Ex 1. They say that Mr David lives in New York.

⇨ It is said that Mr. David lives in New York.(Cách 1)

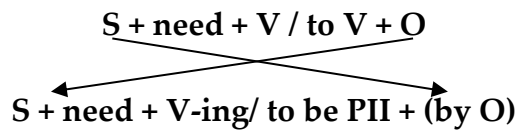
⇨ Mr. David is said to live in New York. (Cách 2 tương đương thì động từ)

Ex 2. They say that Mr. David lived in New York many years ago.

⇨ It is said that Mr. David lived in New York many years ago. (Cách 1)

⇨ Mr. David is said to have lived in New York many years ago. (Cách 3 không tương đương thì động từ)

❖ Need (Cần làm gì)



Ex: I need wash/ to wash my hat.

↳ My hat need washing.

↳ My hat needs to be washed.

❖ Be supposed + to V

* Có bốn phận trách nhiệm làm gì

It is one's duty + To V + O

Ex: It is your duty to clean the room.

► **S + be + supposed + to V + O**

↳ You are supposed to clean the room.

* Được cho là, được nói là... (= be said to V)

Ex: Jack is supposed to be very rich

↳ Jack is said to be very rich.

❖ PRACTICE (LUYỆN TẬP)

Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

- Those people always get their house _____ whenever they go away for a few days.
A. be looked after B. look after C. to look after D. looked after
- A red rose _____ the beautiful girl by her old school boyfriend.
A. gave to B. was given C. was given to D. gave
- Last night a tornado swept through Rockvill. It _____ everything in its path.
A. destroyed B. was destroyed
C. was being destroyed D. had been destroyed
- _____ this work _____ before you went to Moscow?
A. Will/ have been done B. Has/ been done
C. Will/ be done D. Had/ been done
- If you _____ about it, will you be able to answer?
A. are asked B. ask C. will be asked D. asked
- "Can't we do something about the situation?" - "Something _____ right now."
A. is doing B. is do C. is being done D. has been doing
- The money _____ to him 2 months ago, but it _____ back yet.
A. was lent/ had not been given B. has been lent/ was not given
C. was lent/ has not given D. was lent/ has not been given
- Education _____ to be the most important element to develop a country.
A. often be considered B. can often consider
C. often considers D. can often be considered
- This exercise may _____ with a pencil.
A. be written B. be to write C. be writing D. write
- She could easily _____ for a top model.
A. be mistaken B. have mistaken C. been mistaken D. to be mistaken
- The cutting down of trees _____ to prevent forest destruction
A. should control B. should be controlled
C. would control D. controlling
- All the students _____ finish their assignments before they went camping.
A. had made B. had made to C. had been made D. had been made to

13. Mr. Pike _____ the most famous archaeologist in our city.
 A. thinks to be B. is thought to be C. is thought that D. thought to be
14. The X-ray _____ in 1895.
 A. is believed to have been discovered B. is believed to be discovered
 C. believed to have been discovered D. believed to discover
15. Reagan _____ an actor years ago.
 A. is said to be B. was said being
 C. was said have been D. is said to have been
16. It _____ that learning a foreign language _____ a lot of time.
 A. says / is taken B. is saying / has been taken
 C. is said / takes D. was said / was taken.
17. The telephone _____ by Alexander Graham Bell.
 A. invented B. is inventing C. be invented D. was invented
18. Beethoven's Fifth Symphony _____ next weekend.
 A. is going to be performed B. has been performed
 C. will be performing D. will have performed
19. English has become a second language in some countries where _____ for administration, broadcasting and education.
 A. is used B. it is used C. used D. being used
20. In the US, the first stage of compulsory education _____ as elementary education.
 A. to be generally known B. is generally known
 C. generally known D. is generally knowing

Choose the underlined part among A, B, C or D that needs correcting.

1. Breakfast is serving in Pierrot's Restaurant between 7 and 9:30 a.m.
 A B C D
2. Jose had her passport steal on a train in Italy.
 A B C D
3. Some trees have planted by the gardener already.
 A B C D
4. Some days ago I had my teeth checking by the dentist.
 A B C D
5. These pills should be taked every four hours.
 A B C D
6. The letter should been delivered in the afternoon.
 A B C D
7. The mail has sent to the wrong address.
 A B C D
8. When he arrived at the furniture shop, they had been sold the table he wanted.
 A B C D
9. The first May Day celebrated in England in 1890.
 A B C D
10. In many universities, classes taught in English though the native language isn't English.
 A B C D
11. Hamlet was wrote by William Shakespeare.
 A B C D
12. Every possible effort were made by the orphanage to find the boy's parents.
 A B C D

13. This class has canceled because few students had registered before registration closed.

A B C D

14. The students got the librarian buy books for them.

A B C D

15. I see that chopsticks are widely use in China.

A B C D

16. I like your photos of wide animals. Where did they taken?

A B C D

17. Doctor Brown will be given you some useful advice.

A B C D

18. I think you should be water this plant daily.

A B C D

19. Harry is going to send a postcard for Tom tomorrow.

A B C D

20. Lunch is now be served in the restaurant.

A B C D

Change the following sentences into passive voice.

1. They will send him abroad to study.

↻ _____

2. She used this room.

↻ _____

3. Someone stole my bike yesterday.

↻ _____

4. He received a letter from his parents.

↻ _____

5. She will buy a new house.

↻ _____

6. They aren't building my house.

↻ _____

7. He could solve the math problem easily.

↻ _____

8. I clean the floor every day.

↻ _____

9. My mother bought this dress this morning.

↻ _____

10. She did this exercise two days ago.

↻ _____

Rewrite the following sentences in the Passive Voice

1. Journalists reported that four people had been injured in the fire.

↻ It _____

↻ Four people _____

2. People don't expect that the new party will win the election.

↻ It _____

↻ The new party _____

3. The detective knows that the robber has left the city.

↻ It _____

↻ The robber _____

4. We know that Henry has been unemployed for a long time.

- ↪ It _____
 ↪ Henry _____
5. People say that he was a spy during the Cold War.
 ↪ It _____
 ↪ He _____
6. People believe he may be guilty of murder.
 ↪ It _____
 ↪ He _____
7. Someone said the boss was retired because of his scandal.
 ↪ It _____
 ↪ He _____
8. Many people expect that robots will take people's jobs.
 ↪ It _____
 ↪ Robots _____
9. I believe Bob spent all his money on lottery last month.
 ↪ It _____
 ↪ Bob _____
10. We think that technologies are changing the way we work.
 ↪ It _____
 ↪ Technologies _____

VII. CONDITIONAL SENTENCE (CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN)

✿ KNOWLEDGE (KIẾN THỨC)

1. Các loại câu điều kiện

Conditional Sentence Type 1	Câu điều kiện có thật, có thể xảy ra ở hiện tại/ tương lai If + S + V(hiện tại), S+ will/ won't + V(nguyên) If it rains tomorrow, we won't go out.
Conditional Sentence Type 2	Câu điều kiện không có thật không thể xảy ra ở hiện tại If + S + V quá khứ), S+ would(not) + V(nguyên) If I had money, I would buy that car. Lưu ý: Trong câu điều kiện loại 2, chỉ dùng "to be" là "WERE" If I were you, I wouldn't behave like that.
Conditional Sentence Type 3	Câu điều kiện không có thật không thể xảy ra ở quá khứ If + S + had + VP2, S + would(not) + have + VP2 If you had finished your homework, you wouldn't have been punished.
Conditional Sentence Mixed 3-2	Câu điều kiện diễn tả tình huống trong quá khứ không thực tế và kết quả có thể xảy ra trong hiện tại. If + S + had + VP2 (+ yesterday, last night,..), S+would(n't) + V(nguyên) + now/ right now/ today/... If you had gone to bed earlier last night, you wouldn't be tired now. .

2. Một số cách diễn đạt điều kiện khác.

<p>1. Unless</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">Unless = if... not (trừ phi)</p> <p>- Nếu mệnh đề "If" có "not", ta thế "Unless" vào vị trí của "If" và bỏ "not", về kia giữ nguyên. .</p> <p>Eg : If you don't speak loudly, he won't hear → Unless you speak loudly, he won't hear</p> <p>Nếu mệnh đề "If" không có "not", ta vẫn thế "Unless" vào vị trí của "If" nhưng thêm hoặc bớt "not" ở mệnh đề sau.</p> <p>Eg : If you give me money, I won't kill you. → Unless you give me money, I will kill you.</p>
<p>3. In case</p>	<p>In case + mệnh đề, (Phòng khi)</p> <p>Eg : In case we stay longer, take some more money.</p>
<p>4. Should</p>	<p>If + S + should +V, mệnh đề. (diễn tả 1 sự việc khó có thể xảy ra)</p> <p>Eg : If you should see Ann, could you ask her to call me?</p>
<p>5. Happen to V</p>	<p>If + S + happen to +V, mệnh đề. (nhấn mạnh sự tình cờ cơ hội của 1 sự việc)</p> <p>Eg : If you happen to see Helen, could you ask her to call me?</p>
<p>6. If + adjective</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">If+ tính từ, mệnh đề.</p> <p>Eg : If necessary, you can take a taxi.</p>
<p>7. Were to V</p>	<p>S + were + to V,... (diễn tả 1 cảnh tượng tượng ở tương lai/ đề nghị lịch sự)</p> <p>Eg : If the government were to cut V.A.T, prices would fall.</p> <p>Lưu ý : Công thức này không áp dụng cho các động từ chỉ tình trạng như: know, like, remember, understand...</p>
<p>8. Without/ But for</p>	<p>Without But for (nếu không có ...) Without/ But for + danh từ, mệnh đề. (thay thế cho cấu trúc "IF... NOT").</p> <p>- If it werent for + danh từ, mệnh đề. (= ĐKL2)</p> <p>- If it hadn't been for + danh từ, mệnh đề. (ĐKL3)</p> <p>Eg : If you hadn't helped us, we would have been in trouble. → But for your help, we would have been in trouble.</p> <p>Eg : If it were not for Jim, this company would be in a mess. → Without Jim, this company would be in a mess.</p>
<p>9. Supposing/ Suppose</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">Supposing/ suppose (giả sử)</p> <p>Eg : Supposing you won the football match, what would you do?</p>
<p>10. Otherwise</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">Otherwise (nếu không thì) .</p> <p>Otherwise + real condition : (điều kiện có thể thực hiện được)</p> <p>Eg : We must be back before midnight, otherwise I will be locked out.</p> <p>Otherwise + unreal condition : (điều kiện không thể thực hiện được)</p> <p>+ Hiện tại: He supports her finance, otherwise she couldn't conduct these surveve</p> <p>+ Quá khứ: I used a computer, otherwise I wouldn't have finished this report.</p>
<p>11. Provided/ as long as</p>	<p>Provided that/ providing that = as long as/ so long as = on condition that + mệnh đề, mệnh đề (miên là)</p> <p>Eg : You can go home late provided that you do the homework.</p>
<p>12. Wish/ If only</p>	<p>If only/ S wish + S+V(quá khứ) (ước ngược với hiện tại)</p> <p>Eg : If only I had today off.</p>

	If only/ S wish + S + V(quá khứ hoàn thành) (ước ngược với quá khứ) Eg : They wish that they hadn't spent \$500.
13. It's time	It's (high/ about) time + S + V(quá khứ) (đã đến lúc phải làm gì) Eg : It's time we did our homework.
14. Would rather	S + would rather + S + V(quá khứ) (muốn ai đó làm gì) Eg : I'd rather you didn't smoke here.

❀ PRACTICE (LUYỆN TẬP)

Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

- If I were a better conversationalist, _____ to parties more often?
 A. I would be invited
 B. I would have been invited
 C. would I be invited
 D. would I have been invited
- Should she have some more money, she _____ a better car.
 A. would buy
 B. will buy
 C. buys
 D. bought
- Had you been more careful, such typing mistakes _____ avoided.
 A. can have been
 B. would be
 C. might have been
 D. should be
- Don't worry _____ home late tonight
 A. when I'll be
 B. if I'll be
 C. unless I'll be
 D. if I'm
- If I _____ you, I wouldn't buy that book.
 A. are
 B. am
 C. were
 D. aren't
- If she _____ harder, she can pass the exam.
 A. study
 B. studies
 C. studied
 D. studying
- Unless it rains soon, a lot of plants _____ .
 A. die
 B. will die
 C. won't die
 D. would die
- If I _____ an Angel, I would try to make happy all the children.
 A. am
 B. have been
 C. were
 D. had been
- If she _____ the truth, she'd never want to see you again
 A. would know
 B. knows
 C. will know
 D. knew
- If the wall weren't so high, he _____ it up to take his ball down.
 A. climbed
 B. could climb
 C. is climbing
 D. climb
- I think he is not at home. If he _____ in, he _____ the phone.
 A. was / answered
 B. were/ would answer
 C. were / would have answered
 D. had been / would have answered
- You would study Italian if it _____ here.
 A. was teaching
 B. were taught
 C. would be taught
 D. is taught
- I would have visited you before if there _____ a lot of people in your house.
 A. hadn't
 B. hadn't been
 C. wouldn't be
 D. wasn't
- You made a mistake by telling her a lie. It _____ better if you _____ to her.
 A. would have been / hadn't lied
 B. would be / didn't lie
 C. will be / don't lie
 D. would be / hadn't lied
- John would take a great risk now if he _____ his money in that business last year.
 A. would invest
 B. invested
 C. had invested
 D. invests
- If you waited, he _____ .
 A. will come
 B. would come
 C. comes
 D. wouldn't come
- If you _____ the bell, the servant would come.

A. ring B. rings C. don't ring D. rang

18. If you press that button what _____?

A. would happen B. would have happened
C. will happen D. happen

19. I _____ one of my special desserts for dinner if you like.

A. make B. will make C. am going to make D. am making

20. The car _____ if somebody takes it there.

A. will be repaired B. would be repaired C. will be repaired D. is repair

Choose the underlined part among A, B, C or D that needs correcting.

1. Provided you kept quiet, we'll allow you to play here.

A B C D

2. We will help you realize your dream unless you don't cheat us.

A B C D

3. If Dave doesn't invite me to his birthday party today. I would feel disappointed.

A B C D

4. If I hadn't got up earlier this morning, I would miss my flight to Seoul.

A B C D

5. We stay at home if it snows tomorrow.

A B C D

6. If we earned enough money, we'll buy a new hi-fi system.

A B C D

7. What would you do if you will get lost in a forest at night?

A B C D

8. Mr. Will wouldn't have moved to London if he would found a job here last week.

A B C D

9. What do you do if you won the first prize of the lottery?

A B C D

10. Would people be able to fly if they have feathers instead of hair?

A B C D

11. I would do it if I could, but I can't so I wouldn't even try

A B C D

12. If Peter had been more careful, he wouldn't break the camera I lent him.

A B C D

13. Roger wouldn't have made such a lot of mistakes if he hasn't been so tired.

A B C D

14. How nice it would be for our parents if we could built a house for them.

A B C D

15. If your son were old enough, he could be able to take the competition next week.

A B C D

16. I would have called you if I could have known your number.

A B C D

17. If I knew Linda's address, I would sent her a Christmas card now.

A B C D

18. What does Jane do if she fails the university entrance examination?

A B C D

19. If John's parents know French, they could help him with his project.

A B C D

20. If Laura apologized to me for his bad behaviour yesterday, I would have forgiven her.

A

B

C

D

Complete the second sentence in such a way that it means the same as the given one.

- They weren't listening carefully so they didn't understand what she was saying.
↳ They might _____
- You took me to your friend's party and I met Hung.
↳ If you _____
- If you don't wear helmet, you can't ride your bike.
↳ Unless _____
- I would visit my grandpa, but it's raining.
↳ If _____
- It's a pity that I don't have enough money, so I can't buy that dress.
↳ If _____
- Sue didn't miss the train because I woke her up in time.
↳ If _____
- Dan got so angry because we were an hour late.
↳ Dan wouldn't _____
- Julia didn't take her umbrella yesterday, so she got wet.
↳ If Julia _____
- Study hard or you'll fail the exam.
↳ If _____
- I don't see you very often because you live so far.
↳ If _____

VIII. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD (GIẢ ĐỊNH)

❁ KNOWLEDGE (KIẾN THỨC)

Subjunctive Mood (Thức giả định)		
Present Subjunctive (HTGD)	Past Subjunctive (QKGD)	Past perfect Subjunctive (QKHTGD)

1. Hiện tại giả định

Hình thức: V(nguyên) (ở tất cả các ngôi)

- Từ "that" phải luôn xuất hiện trong câu giả định hiện tại ngoại trừ một số thành ngữ
I suggest that he ask for her help.

- Nếu "that" bị lược bỏ thì hầu hết các động từ được theo sau bởi "to infinitive"

Eg: We urge that he leave now.

☞ We urge him to leave now.

Cách dùng

✚ Dùng trong 1 số cấu trúc thành ngữ/ câu cảm thán để thể hiện 1 ao ước, hy vọng hay 1 lời cầu chúc (thường có liên quan đến các sức mạnh siêu nhiên)

If this be (Không chắc chắn lắm về khả năng)

If this be proven right, you would be considered innocent

Come what may: Dù có chuyện gì đi nữa.

Come what may we will stand by you

(God) bless you! (Chúa phù hộ bạn)

May (Diễn tả lời cầu chúc) May you be happy all your life.	If need be: Nếu cần If need be we can take another road.
So be it: Thế cũng được If he doesn't want to be involved, then so be it.	Far be it from me to do sth: Không đời nào tôi.. Far be it from me to tell you what to do! but I think..
God be with you!= good bye (Chia tay nhau)	
Long live Vietnam! (Việt nam muôn năm)	God save the queen !
Success attend you! (Chúc bạn thành công)	God save the queen! (Thượng đế hãy phù hộ cho Nữ vương)
Heaven forbid! (Lạy trời)	Heaven help us! (Cầu Chúa phù hộ chúng ta)

✚ Dùng sau một số động từ để thể hiện ý muốn, yêu cầu, đề nghị

S + V(any tense) + that + S + (not) + V(nguyên)			
advise	demand	prefer	require
propose	insist	command	stipulate
order	recommend	suggest	decreet
request	urge	move	ask

The doctor suggested that he stop smoking.

Congress had decreed that the gasoline tax be abolished.

We proposed that he take a vacation.

✚ Dùng sau một số tính từ

It + be (any tense) + adj + that + S + (not) + V(nguyên)			
important	necessary/ vital	required	essential/crucial
advised	possible	recommended	mandatory
proposed/ imperative	obligatory	suggested	urgent

It was urgent that she leave at once.

It has been proposed that we not change the topic.

It is important that they be told the truth.

Lưu ý: Nếu bỏ "that", chủ ngữ sau "that" sẽ biến thành "for sb", câu mất tính chất giả định và trở thành dạng mệnh lệnh thức gián tiếp.

It + be (any tense) + adj + for sb + (not) + to V(nguyên)

It is necessary for him to find the books.

It has been proposed for us to change the topic.

✚ Dùng sau tất cả các danh từ xuất phát từ những động từ và tính từ trên

demand	request	recommendation	insistence
proposal	preference	suggestion	

There is suggestion from the doctor that the patient stop smoking.

It is recommendation that the vehicle owner be present at the court

2. Quá khứ giả định

Hình thức: V quá khứ/ were

Cách dùng

- ✚ Dùng trong câu điều kiện loại 2

If I were you, I would go.

If he knew this, he would be happy.

- ✚ Dùng trong câu ước không có thực ở hiện tại: S + wish = If only

I wish I could speak Chinese (but I can't)

If only my son were good at Math.

- ✚ Dùng sau "as if / as though" để chỉ 1 giả định không có thật ở hiện tại (cứ như thể là)

S1+V (hiện tại) +	as if	+ S2 +V (quá khứ)
	as though	

He talks as if he were my father.

He behaves as though he owned the place.

- ✚ Dùng trong cấu trúc: It's (high about) time (đã đến lúc)

It's (high about) time + S + V quá khứ (Giả định thời gian đến trễ một chút)

It's time for sb to do sth (Thời gian vừa vặn, không đưa ra giả định)

It's high time I left for the airport.

It's about time we went home. It is time for me to get to the airport.

Lưu ý: Nếu sau: "It's time +/ he/ she/ it" là động từ "to be" thì ta dùng "was"

3. Quá khứ hoàn thành giả định

Hình thức: Had + VP2.

Cách dùng

- ✚ Dùng trong câu điều kiện loại 3

If I had been there, I should have understood node

- ✚ Dùng trong câu ước không có thực ở quá khứ: S + wish = If only

I wish that I hadn't spent so much money.

If only she had asked someone's advice

- ✚ Dùng sau "as if, as though" để chỉ 1 giả định không có thật ở quá khứ (cứ như thể là).

S1 + V (quá khứ) +	as if	+ S2 + had + VP2
	as though	

He looked as if he had seen ghosts.

He breathed as if he had run 10 km

Lưu ý: Sau "as if/ as though" không nhất thiết phải luôn dùng thức giả định.

It looks as if it is going to rain.

❁ PRACTICE (LUYỆN TẬP)

Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. If I _____ more experience, they would have accepted my application.

A. have

B. will have

C. had had

D. have had

2. If only it _____ warm and sunny today. I'm fed up with snow and cold.

A. be

B. would be

C. were

D. had been

3. I wish another more effective teaching method _____ used.

A. is

B. was

C. were

D. has been

4. A: "Could you lend me some money?"

B: "I wish I _____ you some money for your rent, but I'm broke myself."

A. can lend

B. would lend

C. could lend

D. will lend

5. I can't stand him. He always talks as if he _____ everything.

A. knew

B. knows

C. has known

D. had known

6. I suggest that John _____ the directions carefully before assembling the bicycle. He doesn't want the wheels to fall off while he is riding down a hill.
A. reading B. reads C. read D. have ready
7. It is strange that he _____ so upset about such a trifle, isn't it?
A. were B. shall be C. should be D. have been
8. I would rather that you _____ me tomorrow.
A. call B. to call C. calling D. will call
9. They insisted on my coming early. They insisted that _____ .
A. my early coming B. I had to come early
C. I be come early D. I should come early
10. It's high time you _____ a haircut.
A. have B. had C. to have D. had had
11. Mrs White always talks to her baby as though he _____ an adult.
A. is B. were C. had been D. will be
12. It is essential that she _____ the truth about her illness.
A. tell B. be told C. is told D. tells
13. I wish this English course _____ the whole year.
A. will last B. may last C. lasted D. last
14. I wish that someday I _____ able to marry her.
A. will be B. am C. would be D. had been
15. He talks as if he _____ all the work himself but in fact Tom and I did most of it.
A. was doing B. had done C. did D. has done
16. They treat us as if we _____ all idiots.
A. are B. had been C. were D. was
17. I don't understand this point of grammar. I wish I _____ it better.
A. understood B. would understand C. had understood D. understands
18. Yesterday I met a very beautiful girl. I really want to see her again but I don't know how to go about it. I wish _____ .
A. I didn't meet her yesterday B. I had know her address
C. I knew her address D. I will meet her tomorrow
19. He looks as though he _____ a square meal in his life, but in fact his wife feeds him very well.
A. has never got B. never got C. never gets D. had never got
20. I feel terrible. The heavy truck raced by me at full speed. I feel as if I _____ over.
A. was run B. have been run C. had been run D. was being run

Circle and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences.

1. Jack would prefer to walk to school rather than to ride my bike.
A B C D
2. The young girl behaves as if she is an angel.
A B C D
3. Susan feels happy as if she would get good marks in the exams.
A B C D
4. If only they would attend the course with me, but they can't.
A B C D
5. If only I bought that camera yesterday. It was definitely affordable.
A B C D

6. Tom asked that we attended his graduation ceremony next week.
 A B C D
7. It is essential that everyone to enter the building with proper identification.
 A B C D
8. David wishes he didn't cheated in the exam. The teacher was very angry with him.
 A B C D
9. My brother wishes he took the camera with him as the view was wonderful.
 A B C D
10. You look overweight. If only you joined a gym with me this summer.
 A B C D

Rewrite the following sentences.

- Please don't say things like that.
 ↪ I wish _____
- Nobody told me you were at home yesterday.
 ↪ I wish _____
- Tom didn't buy her a present, so he was embarrassed.
 ↪ Tom wished _____
- Don't touch my CDs!
 ↪ I would rather _____
- I'm sorry Jim does not catch any fish.
 ↪ If only _____
- He appears to be running away from your fierce dog.
 ↪ It looks as if _____
- I would love to be rich and famous.
 ↪ If only _____
- I'd love to be in a secluded beach in Mexico.
 ↪ I wish _____
- I really think you ought to acquire a few manners.
 ↪ It's high _____
- I'm really sorry I didn't invite her to the party.
 ↪ I really wish _____

IX. REPORTED SPEECH (TƯỜNG THUẬT)

✿ KNOWLEDGE (KIẾN THỨC)

1. Cách thay đổi trong câu tường thuật

★ **Lùi thì (Lùi xuống 1 thì)**

Câu trực tiếp	Câu tường thuật
1. Hiện tại đơn V / Vs / Ves / am / is / are / don't + V1 / doesn't V1	=> Quá khứ đơn V2 / Ved / was / were / didn't + V
2. Hiện tại tiếp diễn am / is / are + V-ing	=> Quá khứ tiếp diễn was / were + V-ing
3. Hiện tại hoàn thành have / has + V3/ed	=> Quá khứ hoàn thành had + V3/ed
4. Quá khứ đơn	=> Quá khứ hoàn thành

was / were / V2 / ved	had + V3/ed
5. Quá khứ tiếp diễn was / were + V-ing	=> QKHTTD had + been + V-ing
6. Tương lai đơn will + V	=> Tương lai trong quá khứ would + V
7. can	=> could
8. may	=> might
9. must / need	=> had to
☞ Thì QKHT , ought to, could , should, might, used to, would rather, had better... => giữ nguyên	

★ Đổi ngôi

- Đổi Ngôi thứ nhất (I, we, me, us, my, our, mine, ours) phù hợp với Chủ ngữ trong mệnh đề chính
- Đổi Ngôi thứ hai (you, your, yours) phù hợp với Tân ngữ trong mệnh đề chính
- Ngôi thứ BA (he, she, it, him, her, his, they, them, their) => không đổi

Note! (Đổi ngôi thứ nhất số ít và số nhiều sang câu gián tiếp)

Trực tiếp	Tường thuật	Trực tiếp	Tường thuật
I	☞ He (nam) / She (nữ)	We	☞ they
me	☞ him / her	us	☞ them
my	☞ his / her	our	☞ their
mine	☞ his / hers	ours	☞ theirs
myself	☞ himself / herself	ourselves	☞ themselves

★ Đổi trạng từ

Trực tiếp	Tường thuật
1. this	=> that
2. these	=> those
3. now	=> then
4. here	=> there
5. today	=> that day
6. tonight	=> that night
7. ago	=> before
8. yesterday	=> the previous day / the day before
9. tomorrow	=> the following day / the day after
10. last....	=> the previous.....
11. next.....	=> the following

Lưu ý: không dùng dấu ngoặc kép, dấu chấm hỏi, dấu chấm than, dấu hai chấm trong lời nói tường thuật

Các trường hợp không đổi thì

1. Khi động từ tường thuật ở thì hiện tại hoặc tương lai (say, tell, have told, will say...)
2. Thì quá khứ đơn có thời gian xác định .
3. Diễn tả 1 chân lý, sự thật hiển nhiên
4. câu điều kiện loại 2 và 3

★ Các mẫu câu tường thuật cần nắm rõ.

❄ Statements

say
S + say to SO + (that) + clause
tell SO

Ex: Tom said, "I am very busy."

↳ Tom said (that) he was very busy.

❄ Commands/ Requests

a. Mệnh lệnh khẳng định

S + told/ asked / advised ...+ O + to V1

Ex: "Hurry up, Lan!"

↳ He told Lan to hurry up.

b. Mệnh lệnh phủ định

S + told/ asked / advised... + O + not + to V1

Ex: "Don't leave this room"

↳ He ordered them not to leave that room.

Lưu ý: Một số động từ giới thiệu được theo sau bởi "O +to V1": advise, ask, tell, remind, invite, encourage, order, expect, recommend, warn,...

❄ Yes- No Questions

asked + (O)
S + wanted to know + if/whether + S + V(lùi thì)

Ex: He said, "Can you speak English?"

↳ He asked me if/whether I could speak English.

❄ Wh- questions

S + | asked + (O) |
| wanted to know + | what/when/why + S + V(lùi thì)

Ex: He said, "When did you leave the room?"

↳ He wanted to know when I had left the room.

❄ Lời yêu cầu

Would/ Could/ Will/ Can you + V
↳ S + asked/told + O + to V
Would you mind/ Do you mind + V-ing
↳ S + asked/told + O + to V

❄ Tương thuật với V-ing/to + V

Tương thuật với to V		
Yêu cầu	: asked	+ O + to V
Mời	: invited	+ O + to V
Khuyên	: advised	+ O + to V
Nhắc nhở	: reminded	+ O + to V
Ra lệnh	: ordred	+ O + to V
Khuyến khích	: encouraged	+ O + to V

Cảnh báo	: warned	+ O + to V		
Muốn	: wanted	+ O + to V		
Đồng ý	: agreed	+ to-V		
Hứa	: promised	+ to-V		
Tường thuật với V-ing				
Cám ơn	: thanked	+ O	+ for	V-ing
Xin lỗi	: apologized	(to O)	+ for	V-ing
Buộc tội	: accused	+ O	+ of	V-ing
Chúc mừng	: congratulated	+ O	+ on	V-ing
Cảnh báo	: warned	+ O	+ against	V-ing
Ngăn ngừa	: stopped / prevented	+ O	+ from	V-ing
Đề nghị	: suggested	+		V-ing
	suggested that + S	+ (should) +		V
Khăng khăng	: insisted	+ on/upon	+	V-ing
Phủ nhận	: denied	+		V-ing
Thừa nhận	: admitted	+		Ving / having V3/ed

❁ PRACTICE (LUYỆN TẬP)

Choose the best answer A, B , C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

- Nam wanted to know what time _____.
A. the movie began
B. the movie begins
C. did the movie begin
D. does the movie begin
- I wondered_____ the right thing.
A. if I am doing
B. was I doing
C. am I doing
D. whether I was doing
- He told me _____ him up at six o'clock.
A. please pick
B. to pick
C. should pick
D. I can pick
- The woman asked_____ catch a bus to school.
A. can the children
B. if the children can
C. whether the children could
D. could the children
- Bob said he_____ a lot of good marks that semester.
A. gets
B. getting
C. have got
D. got
- They told their manager that they_____ their best to do the tasks.
A. try
B. will try
C. are trying
D. would try
- She asked me where I_____ the previous night.
A. was
B. am
C. had been
D. has been
- She_____ me whether I liked French fries.
A. ask
B. asks
C. asked
D. asking
- “ _____ off the television”, he said.
A. Please turn
B. Please to turn
C. Turned please
D. Please, turning
- William said that the train_____ yet
A. had arrived
B. hadn't arrived
C. haven't arrived
D. hasn't arrived
- He asked the children _____ the electric sockets.
A. not touching
B. not to touch
C. if they don't touch
D. don't touch
- David asked me who _____ the writer of that book.
A. was
B. were
C. is
D. has been
- He wants to know whether I _____ back to Hoi An the next day.

- A. come B. came C. will come D. would come
14. They asked me how many students _____ .
A. I taught B. I teach C. I did teach D. did I teach
15. Laura wanted to know _____ shopping the previous afternoon.
A. if we had been going B. that if we had been going
C. we were going D. that we were going
16. Lucy asked me why I had not gone to Paris _____ .
A. the summer before B. summer ago
C. the next summer D. last summer
17. Tony told me that they _____ meat two days _____ .
A. have not eaten / ago B. had not eaten / before
C. did not eat / before D. would not eat / ago
18. Charlie _____ that his father was in hospital.
A. told me B. told to me C. said me D. asked me
19. Julia said that she _____ there at noon.
A. is going to be B. was going to be C. will be D. can be
20. He said that Linda and John _____ married _____ .
A. were getting / tomorrow B. are getting / the next day
C. were getting / the next day D. will getting / the day after

Change each of the following sentences into reported speech.

1. "Peter, do you prefer tea or coffee?" she said.
↳ She _____
2. "The film began at seven o'clock," he said.
↳ He said _____
3. The father said, "I was on a business trip the whole day yesterday."
↳ The father _____
4. "My brother will get married next month," James said.
↳ James _____
5. Henry said to his mother, "Come and spend a week with us."
↳ Henry told _____
6. He said to me, "Keep a seat for me in the lecture hall."
↳ He _____
7. Alfred said to John, "I did not promise to send you a telegram."
↳ Alfred _____
8. "I will get myself a drink," she said.
↳ She said _____
9. "I cannot drive them home," he said.
↳ He said _____
10. Mike said to Henry, "Give me my book back, please."
↳ Mike _____

Choose the word or phrase in each of the following sentences that needs correcting.

1. He said that he will pick me up at 8 am the following day.
A B C D
2. She said that the books in the library would be available tomorrow .
A B C D
3. Henry said me to come and spend a week with him.
A B C D

4. The receptionist said I must fill in that form before I attended the interview.
A B C D
5. Marty said a good friendship is like a diamond valuable, beautiful and durable .
A B C D
6. When I was a teenager, my dad always told me that I hadn't used to stay out later than ten o'clock.
A B C D
7. I asked him how far was it from my school to the post office if I went there by taxi.
A B C D
8. I asked him how far was it to the station if I went there by taxi .
A B C D
9. All of my students wondered how many people lived in Tokyo?
A B C D
10. They asked me that I could do the shopping for them.
A B C D

X. RELATIVE CLAUSES (MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ)

❁ KNOWLEDGE (KIẾN THỨC)

1. Cách sử dụng các đại từ quan hệ trong MĐQH:

	S (chủ ngữ)	O (tân ngữ)	P(sở hữu)
Danh từ chỉ người	Who/that	Who/whom/that	Whose
Danh từ chỉ vật	Which/that	Which/that	Whose
Dt vừa người & vật	That	That	
Nơi chốn		Where = in/at/on which	
Thời gian		When = in/at/on which	
Lý do		Why = for which	

2. Các loại mệnh đề quan hệ

<p>a. Mệnh đề quan hệ có giới hạn (không dấu phẩy)</p> <p>- thường được dùng khi danh từ đứng trước ĐTQH có mạo từ "a/an/the"</p> <p>- Bỏ "who, whom, which, that" khi nó làm túc từ</p>	<p>Ex: The book is interesting. I bought it yesterday. ☞ The book (which) I bought yesterday is interesting.</p>
<p>b. MĐQH không giới hạn (có dấu phẩy)</p> <p>- MĐQH không giới hạn xuất hiện khi danh từ đứng trước đại từ quan hệ là các loại danh từ sau:</p> <p>+ Danh từ riêng</p> <p>+ Danh từ có tính từ chỉ định (this/that/these/those)</p> <p>+ Danh từ có tính từ sở hữu</p>	<p>Ex: Tom, whom you met last night, is my son. Ex: That man, who has sent you a gift, lives next door to me. Ex: His book, which was bought last night, is</p>

<p>(my/his/her/your/their/our/its) + Sở hữu cách (Tom's, ...) - Không dùng " THAT" trong MĐQH không giới hạn. - Không được bỏ các đại từ quan hệ làm tân ngữ (WHO, WHOM, WHICH) và các trạng từ quan hệ trong MĐQH không giới hạn. - Trong MĐQH không giới hạn " WHICH" có thể được dùng để bổ nghĩa cho cả câu. - Khi muốn thêm thông tin về toàn bộ hoặc 1 phần số vật hay người cụ thể , ta dùng mđqh không giới hạn với " of which , of whom, of whose, most of, half of , plenty of, some of , one of , neither of, all of, several of, both of, ten of, a few of"</p>	<p>interesting. Ex: <u>Lan's book</u>, which was bought last night, is interesting . Ex: Peter failed again, which does not make us surprised. Ex: I received two jobs offers. I accepted neither of them ☞ I received two jobs offers, neither of which I accepted Ex: I have two friends .One of their problems is poor study habit ☞ I have two friends, one of whose problems is poor study habit</p>
---	---

3. Giới từ với đại từ quan hệ

<p>Trong mệnh đề quan hệ có giới từ thì giới từ có 2 vị trí đứng: - Giới từ đứng trước đại từ quan hệ hoặc giới từ đứng sau động từ. - Lưu ý: Giới từ không đứng trước đại từ quan hệ " <u>who và that</u>" - Khi giới từ là thành phần của cụm động từ thì không thể đem giới từ ra trước "whom, which, whose" - Giới từ " WITHOUT" không được đặt sau động từ mà phải đặt trước đại từ quan hệ.</p>	<p>Ex: She is the woman <u>about whom</u> I told you She is the woman <u>who/whom/ that</u> I told you about. Ex: Did you find the world which you were <u>looking up</u> ? (NOT : ____ the world up which you were looking ?) Ex: The woman without whom I can't live is Jane (NOT : The woman whom can't live without is Jane)</p>
---	--

4. Mệnh đề quan hệ rút gọn thành ngữ phân từ: V-ing/to V/V₃

<p>1. Ngữ hiện tại phân từ (V-ing) được dùng khi động từ trong mệnh đề quan hệ ở thể chủ động.</p>	<p>Ex: That man, who is standing over there , is my best friend. ☞ That man , standing over there, is my best friend</p>
<p>2. Ngữ quá khứ phân từ(V_{3/ed}) được dùng khi động từ trong mệnh đề quan hệ ở thể bị động.</p>	<p>Ex: The boy who was injured in the accident was taken to the hospital. ☞ The boy injured in the accident was taken to the hospital.</p>
<p>3. "To infinitive" có thể được dùng khi đại từ quan hệ làm chủ ngữ đứng sau "the first, the second, ..., the last, the next, the only, the one, dạng so sánh nhất(the + adj ngắn + est/ the most + adj dài) hoặc để chỉ mục đích, sự cho</p>	<p>Ex: He was the last man who left the burning building. ☞ He was the last man to leave the burning building.</p>

❖ PRACTICE (LUYỆN TẬP)

Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. Genghis Khan, _____ name means "very mighty ruler", was a Mongol emperor in the Middle Ages.
A. whom B. whose C. who D. which
2. The house _____ windows are blue was built in the 20th century.
A. which B. that C. whose D. of which
3. The paintings _____ are marked with small red dot have already been sold.
A. which B. who C. whose D. whom
4. The restaurant _____ Bob recommended was too expensive.
A. where B. which C. whose D. when
5. Bogota, _____ is the capital city of Columbia, is a cosmopolitan city.
A. who B. that C. which D. where
6. Sally lost her job, _____ wasn't a surprise.
A. which B. who C. whom D. that
7. The land and the people _____ I have met are nice.
A. that B. who C. which D. whose
8. The chemistry book _____ was a little expensive.
A. that I bought it B. I bought that C. what I bought D. that I bought
9. I hardly understood _____ she was saying about her dream.
A. which B. that C. what D. why
10. The girl _____ I borrowed the dictionary asked me to use it carefully.
A. whose B. from whom C. from whose D. whom
11. I wrote to the girl _____ I met at the meeting.
A. whom B. whose C. which D. her
12. The boy to _____ I lend my money is poor.
A. who B. that C. whom D. whose
13. The student _____ you just met is one of my classmates.
A. what B. which C. whose D. that
14. The woman _____ lives next door to us is a doctor.
A. that B. whom C. who D. A and C
15. Carol is the best friend _____ I've been had in my life.
A. whom B. who C. which D. both A&B
16. The pollution _____ they were talking is getting worse.
A. that B. about which C. which D. to which
17. Wednesday is the day _____ a tour guide leads a tour around the town's historical places.
A. when B. which C. whose D. where
18. The town _____ the folk festival is taking place is usually a quiet resort.
A. when B. where C. whom D. which
19. The reason _____ she was absent from class yesterday was told to the teacher.
A. that B. when C. which D. why
20. This is the CD _____ I bought last month.
A. who B. which C. when D. whom
21. Can you remember the day _____ John was born?
A. when B. where C. that D. who

22. The secretary _____ is sitting at the first desk on the right can give you the information.
A. who B. whom C. where D. which
23. Paul O'Grady _____ died a few years ago, was a kind and loving man.
A. , whom B. that C. , who D. , which
24. I hate the music _____ is too loud.
A. which B. who C. whose D. where
25. This is Tony. _____ daughter lives next to James.
A. who B. that C. whose D. whom
26. Can you pass me the pen _____ is next to the dictionary, Joe?
A. that B. which C. who D. both A&B
27. Let's go to the shopping center _____ we can buy something nice for mum's birthday.
both A&B
A. which B. where C. who D. both A&B
28. Don't forget to bring back the book _____ you borrowed.
A. when B. who C. whom D. Ø
29. We really enjoyed the meat _____ Sally made yesterday.
A. which B. when C. where D. who
30. They travelled to Oxford _____ his father studied medicine.
A. when B. which C. where D. Ø

Fill in the gaps using WHO, WHICH, WHOSE or THAT.

- The car _____ broke down was only bought few days ago.
- The little girl _____ mother is a doctor was accompanied by her teacher.
- Mr John, _____ has just bought a new car, had a terrible accident yesterday.
- This is the person _____ I told you about last week.
- The book _____ I borrows from Jane is fantastic!
- Linda's schoolbag, _____ is on the table was bought at the same shop as mine.
- This song, _____ author has died, is very popular.
- The football player _____ scored is the most popular one in my country.
- The singer _____ fans didn't show up was very upset.
- The exam _____ I did last week was vert difficult.

Choose the underlined part among A, B, C or D that needs correcting.

- That is the man who he told me the bad news.
A B C D
- The singer about who I told you yesterday is coming here tomorrow.
A B C D
- That commentator, his name I have forgotten, is very well-known.
A B C D
- The gangsters for who the police are looking robbed the bank yesterday.
A B C D
- Surprisingly, the number of people whom enjoy wave surfing is almost double that of last year.
A B C D
- Every student who majors in English are ready to participate in the orchard contest.
A B C D
- Do you know the reason when English people travel to the left ?
A B C D
- She is the most beautiful woman whose I have ever met.
A B C D

9. Mother's Day is the day when children show their love to their mother on.

A

B

C

D

10. It is complicated because pollution is caused by things when benefit people.

A

B

C

D

Join the sentences to make relative clauses by using suitable relative pronouns.

1. I don't like the man. He is going out with my sister.

↳ I don't _____

2. Charlie Chaplin became a very rich man. He was from a poor family.

↳ Charlie _____

3. That bike was too expensive. He wanted to buy it.

↳ That _____

4. I have just greeted the girl. She is sitting next to my brother.

↳ I have _____

5. Is David the student? David gets the best marks in your class.

↳ Is David _____

6. We met at the restaurant. Sally recommended it to us.

↳ We met at the _____

7. The headmaster phoned Mrs Brown. Her daughter didn't come to school yesterday.

↳ The headmaster phoned _____

8. Can I borrow the book? You enjoyed reading it last week.

↳ Can I _____

9. The first boy has just moved. He knows the truth.

↳ The first _____

10. I don't remember the man. You said you met him at the canteen last week.

↳ I don't remember _____

11. She left here without saying goodbye. This made me sad.

↳ She left here without _____

12. The children often go swimming on Sundays. That have much free time then.

↳ The children often _____

13. They are looking for the man and his dog. They have lost the way in the forest.

↳ They're looking for _____

14. That tree has lovely flowers. It stands near the gate of my house.

↳ That _____

15. My wife wants you to come to dinner. You were speaking to my wife.

↳ My _____

16. Patrick will never forget the day. His son was born then.

↳ Patrick _____

17. Let's take the children to the park. The park has a nice playground.

↳ Let's _____

18. Do you remember Jenny? She used to work in my office.

↳ Do you _____

19. You should go to the new shopping centre. There are a lot of fashionable shops there.

↳ You should go to the new _____

20. Why don't you wear the blue sweater? I gave it to you at Christmas.

↳ Why don't you wear _____

- Although / though / eventhough + Clause

5. Clauses of manner with (mã chỉ thể cách)

*AS (như là), AS IF & AS THOUGH (như thể là)

<p>a. Điều không có thật ở hiện tại S + V + as if/ as though + S + V2/Ved Lưu ý: "were" có thể dùng cho tất cả các chủ từ ở MĐ giả định.</p>	<p>Ex1: She dresses as if she was/were an actress. Ex2: He talks as though he knew where she was.</p>
<p>b. Điều không có thật ở quá khứ S + V_{qk} + as if/ as though + S + had + V3/ved</p>	<p>Ex: He talked about New York as though he had been there before.</p>

*Would rather

<p>a. Giả thiết ở HT hoặc TL S1 + would rather that + S2 + V2/ed</p>	<p>Ex1: Mary's husband doesn't work in the same office as she does. => Mary would rather that her husband worked in the same office as she does.</p>
<p>b. Giả thiết ở Quá Khứ S1 + would rather that + S2 + had + V3/V-ed</p>	<p>Ex2: Her husband didn't go to the office yesterday. => She would rather that her husband had gone to the office yesterday.</p>

❖ PRACTICE (LUYỆN TẬP)

Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

- Did you like the band last night? Yes, _____ I bought their record.
 A. such much B. so much that C. very much that D. too much that
- That's a beautiful dress Jean has on. She always wears _____ clothes.
 A. such a lovely B. so lovely C. such lovely D. so much lovely
- Jill and Jolly were happy _____ it was their both birthday party that day.
 A. because B. even though C. spite of D. Despite
- Nobody could hear her _____ she spoke too quietly.
 A. although B. because C. because of D. in spite of
- Paul is a very competent salesperson. He's _____ good that I am going to give him a raise and a promotion.
 A. definite B. definitely C. so D. so much
- A tree had fallen during the storm, _____ the road was blocked and we couldn't go anywhere.
 A. such that B. so that C. in order that D. but
- There has been a reduction in the oil supply and increased demand, _____ price has risen.
 A. but B. so C. and D. in order that
- _____ he has a headache, he has to take an aspirin.
 A. How B. Because C. Where D. Although
- _____ he always did well on his English tests, his parents were not surprised that he got an B level.
 A. When B. Since C. Because of D. Although
- Our visit to Japan was delayed _____ my wife's illness.
 A. because B. because of C. thanks to D. though

Choose the underlined part among A, B, C or D that needs correcting.

- Although our grandfather was old but he could help us.
 A B C D

2. Mrs. Green was cooking dinner but her daughter Susan was laying the table.
 A B C D
3. My friends advised her to stop doing the housework because her old age.
 A B C D
4. He tried to explain, so she refused to listen.
 A B C D
5. John didn't go to work because of he was seriously ill.
 A B C D
6. My friend was crazy although he was informed of the news of his mother's death.
 A B C D
7. Thunder is rarely heard beyond 15 miles because of temperature and wind vary at different heights in the region around a thunderstorm.
 A B C D
8. Despite of growing industrial activity, the majority of the American people continued to make their living from farming until the beginning of the twentieth century.
 A B C D
9. She turned down the radio so as to disturb the neighbors.
 A B C D
10. He couldn't drive fast owing to the street was crowded and narrow.
 A B C D

Rewrite the following sentences without meaning changes.

1. The kind of milk is so bad that the child can't drink it more.
 ↳ The kind of milk is _____
2. The food was so good that we ate all of it.
 ↳ It was _____
3. The patient was too weak to get up.
 ↳ The patient was so _____
4. This room is too dark for me to study.
 ↳ This room is _____
5. This room is too small for us to hold the meeting.
 ↳ This room isn't large _____
6. The test was so difficult that we couldn't do it.
 ↳ The test was not _____
7. The map is so worn out that I couldn't read it.
 ↳ The map is _____
8. He spoke so fast that we couldn't hear him well.
 ↳ He didn't speak _____
9. Although she didn't want to see The Lord of the Rings, she enjoyed it in the end.
 ↳ In spite of _____
10. They visited Madrid although they didn't have time to visit El Prado.
 ↳ They visited Madrid despite _____

XII. COMPARISON (SO SÁNH)

❁ KNOWLEDGE (KIẾN THỨC)

EQUAL COMPARISON (SO SÁNH BẰNG)

1. Khẳng định:

S + tobe + as + adj + as + noun/ pronoun.
S + V + as + adv + s + noun/ pronoun.

Ex: Lan is as young as Hoa. / Mai dances as beautifully as Hue.

2. Phủ định:

S + tobe + not + as/ so + adj + as + noun/ pronoun.
S + V + not + as/ so + adv + as + noun/ pronoun.

Ex: Lan isn't as/ so young as Hoa. / Mai doesn't dances as/ so beautifully as Hue.

3. Cấu trúc "the same as": giống nhau

S + tobe/ V + the same + (noun) + as + noun/ pronoun.

Ex: This book is the same as that one. / She has the same height as my sister.

COMPARATIVE (SO SÁNH HƠN)

1. Tính từ/ trạng từ ngắn

S + tobe + adj-er + than + noun/ pronoun.
S + V + adv-er + than + noun/ pronoun.

Ex: My house is smaller than her house.

She runs faster than me.

Lưu ý về cách thêm "er" đối với tính từ/ trạng từ ngắn:

+ Đối với tính từ/ trạng từ kết thúc bằng chữ "e" thì ta chỉ thêm "r".

Ex: large → larger.

+ Đối với tính từ/ trạng từ kết thúc bằng 1 nguyên âm + 1 phụ âm thì ta phải gấp đôi phụ âm cuối.

Ex: big → bigger, hot → hotter.

+ Đối với các tính từ kết thúc bằng "y" thì ta chuyển "y" thành "i" rồi thêm "er".

Ex: noisy → noisier, friendly → friendlier.

+ Đối với tính từ có 2 âm tiết nhưng kết thúc bằng "y, ow, er, et, el" thì ta vẫn chia các từ này theo công thức so sánh hơn đối với tính từ ngắn.

Ex: narrow → narrower, happy → happier, quiet → quieter, clever → cleverer.

+ Các trạng từ được dùng để bổ nghĩa cho so sánh hơn: much, far, a bit/ a little, a lot.

Ex: This chair is much smaller than that chair.

2. Tính từ/ trạng từ dài

S + tobe + more + adj + than + noun/ pronoun.
S + V + more + adv + than + noun/ pronoun.

Ex: Jenny is more beautiful than me.

Tom talks more slowly than me.

SUPERLATIVE (SO SÁNH NHẤT)

1. Tính từ/ trạng từ ngắn

S + tobe + the + adj-est + noun/ pronoun .
S + V + the + adv-est + noun/ pronoun.

Ex: This is the longest river in the world.

I jump the highest in my class.

2. Tính từ/ trạng từ dài

S + tobe + the most + adj + noun/ pronoun.

S + V + the most + adv + noun/ pronoun.

Ex: Jenny is the most beautiful in my class.

Tom eats the most slowly in my family.

Bảng tính từ/ trạng từ so sánh bất quy tắc:

Tính từ/ trạng từ	So sánh hơn	So sánh nhất	Nghĩa
Good/ well	Better	The best	Tốt
Bad/ badly	Worse	The worst	Tệ
Little	Less	The least	Ít
Much/ many	More	The most	Nhiều
Far	Farther	The farthest	Xa
	Further	The furthest	Thêm nữa/ hơn nữa
Old	Older	The oldest	Già
	Elder	The eldest	Anh (chị) trong nhà

DOUBLE COMPARITIVE (SO SÁNH KÉP)

1. Cùng 1 tính từ: (càng ... ngày càng...)

a. Tính từ/ trạng từ ngắn:

S + tobe + adj-er + and + adj-er.

S + V + adv-er + and + adv-er.

Ex: It is getting hotter and hotter.

His voice became weaker and weaker.

b. Tính từ/ trạng từ dài:

S + tobe + more and more + adj.

S + V + more and more + adv.

Ex: The lessons are getting more and more difficult.

The storm became more and more violent.

2. Hai tính từ khác nhau: (càng ... thì càng...)

The + comparative + S + tobe/ V, the + comparative + S + tobe/V.

Ex: The taller she gets, the thinner she is.

The more beautiful she is, the more attractive she gets.

The more intelligent she is, the lazier she becomes.

Lưu ý:

Trong câu so sánh kép, nếu túc từ là một danh từ thì ta đặt danh từ ấy ngay sau tính từ so sánh.

Ex: The more English vocabulary we know, the better we speak

❖ PRACTICE (LUYỆN TẬP)

Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

- _____ other mammals, whales do not have a sense of smell.
A. Not alike B. Unlike C. Unlikely D. Dislike
- The stomach of a cow, _____ that of other ruminants, is divided into four compartments.
A. likely B. similar C. same D. like
- The Romans used central heating systems very much like _____.
A. those of today B. today's do

- A B C D
3. Not everyone has realized that the most largest organ of the human body is the skin.
A B C D
4. The more fast you drive, the more dangerous you get.
A B C D
5. I found the conversation as most interesting and I was glad to practice my English.
A B C D
6. The Caspian Sea, a salt lake, is the largest than any other lakes in the world.
A B C D
7. The Mekong is one of the longer rivers in the world.
A B C D
8. Most babies will grow up not be as cleverer as their parents.
A B C D
9. New York is the larger of all American cities.
A B C D
10. The new models are not only less expensive but also the more efficient.
A B C D
11. The more they advertise, the least expensive things are.
A B C D
12. The problem is the more serious because there has been no solution up to now.
A B C D
13. Nam plays the piano better than I am.
A B C D
14. It's certainly true that the average woman has weaker muscles than that of the average man.
A B C D
15. In 1925, he joined the advertising department of Doubleday Page and Company, one of the most large publishing houses in New York.
A B C D
16. Many people believe that New York is the most great city in America.
A B C D
17. They asked many questions, checked the figures, and came up with best solution.
A B C D
18. Louise is the more capable of the three girls who have tried out for the part in the play.
A B C D
19. This telephone isn't as cheap the other one, but it works much better.
A B C D
20. The first skill to learn is how to write the more important words, not whole sentences.
A B C D

Rewrite the sentences keeping the same meaning, beginning as available.

1. I didn't spend as much money as you.
↳ You spend _____
2. No river in the world is longer than the Nile.
↳ The Nile _____
3. Lan is better cook than Hoa.
↳ Hoa can't _____
4. No restaurant in the city is better than that one.

- ↳ That restaurant _____
5. This watch is worse than that one.
↳ That watch _____
6. My sister writes more carefully than she did.
↳ My sister used _____
7. This story is more interesting than any other story that I have ever read.
↳ This is _____
8. She is the most beautiful girl I have ever known.
↳ I've never known a _____
9. Peter does not drive so carefully as Tom.
↳ Tom drives _____
10. Yesterday the temperature was nine degrees. Today it's only six degrees.
↳ It _____

XIII. QUANTIFIERS (LƯỢNG TỪ)

✿ KNOWLEDGE (KIẾN THỨC)

Cách dùng	MANY	MUCH
Diễn đạt ý nghĩa là "NHIỀU"	- MANY = a large number of/a great many/ a majority of/ a wide variety of/ a wide range of - Dùng với danh từ đếm được.	MUCH = a great deal of/a large amount of... - Dùng với danh từ không đếm được.
	MANY + MUCH = A lot of/lots of/plenty of/a (large) quantity of (Dùng với cả danh từ cả đếm được và không đếm được).	
Diễn đạt ý nghĩa là "MỘT ÍT"	A FEW - Dùng với danh từ đếm được.	A LITTLE - Dùng với danh từ không đếm được.
Diễn đạt ý nghĩa là "HẦU NHƯ KHÔNG/ RẤT ÍT"	FEW - Dùng với danh từ đếm được.	LITTLE - Dùng với danh từ không đếm được.
Diễn đạt ý nghĩa là "MỘT VÀI"	SOME - Dùng trong câu khẳng định và trong câu nghi vấn khi mang ý mời/đề nghị.	ANY - Dùng trong câu phủ định, nghi vấn và dùng trong câu khẳng định khi nó mang ý nghĩa là "bất cứ".
Diễn đạt ý nghĩa là "TẤT CẢ"	ALL - Dùng để chỉ từ ba người/vật (tất cả) trở lên.	BOTH - Dùng để chỉ cả hai người/vật (cả hai).
Diễn đạt ý nghĩa là "KHÔNG"	NONE - Dùng để chỉ từ ba người/vật trở lên đều không.	NEITHER/EITHER - Dùng để chỉ cả hai người/vật đều không. Trong đó: + Neither: dùng trong câu khẳng định. + Either: dùng trong câu phủ định.
Diễn đạt ý nghĩa là	MOST	MOST OF

<p>“HẦU HẾT”</p>	<p>- Most + N = most of + the/tính từ sở hữu + N Lưu ý: MOSTLY (chủ yếu là): dùng như một trạng từ ALMOST (gần như): dùng như một trạng từ bổ trợ cho động từ, tính từ, danh từ.</p>	
<p>Diễn đạt ý nghĩa là “MỖI/MỌI”</p>	<p>EACH</p>	<p>EVERY</p>
	<p>EACH/EVERY: dùng với danh từ đếm được số ít</p>	
		<p>- Dùng với danh từ số nhiều khi có số lượng cụ thể.</p>
<p>Diễn đạt ý nghĩa là “CÁI KHÁC/NGƯỜI KHÁC”</p>	<p>OTHER</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Other + danh từ không đếm được. - Other + danh từ số nhiều - Other + ones - Others được sử dụng như đại từ. <p>Lưu ý: Phân biệt “other” và “others”:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Theo sau “other” thường là một danh từ hoặc đại từ. - Mặt khác “others”, bản thân nó là một đại từ và theo sau nó không có bất kì một danh từ nào cả. <p>Sự khác nhau giữa THE OTHER - THE OTHERS:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - The other: cái còn lại trong hai cái, hoặc người còn lại trong hai người,... - The others: những cái còn lại hoặc những người còn lại trong một nhóm có nhiều thứ hoặc nhiều người. 	<p>ANOTHER</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Another + danh từ số ít - Another + one - Another + số đếm + danh từ số nhiều - Another được sử dụng như đại từ

❖ PRACTICE (LUYỆN TẬP)

Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. Andy spent _____ money at the supermarket
A. many B. a lot of C. a number D. too
2. There are _____ organizations to help the deaf and the blind
A. much B. a little C. many D. little
3. I'm very busy at the moment so it may take a _____ time to answer your letters.
A. little B. few C. lots of D. some
4. Very _____ people knew about the truth of the scandal.
A. few B. a few C. much D. little
5. Thank you for bringing me along. I never thought the trip could be so _____ fun.

- A. many B. much C. few D. some
6. The accident looked serious but fortunately _____ people were injured
A. many B. a lot of C. much D. few
7. We didn't take _____ photographs when we were on holiday.
A. much B. a lot of C. many of D. a great deal of
8. _____ the students in my class enjoy taking part in social activities.
A. Most of B. Most C. Many D. The number of
9. He's always busy. He has _____ time to relax.
A. much B. little C. a little D. plenty of
10. She put so _____ salt in the soup that she couldn't have it. It was too salty.
A. many B. little C. much D. a little
11. We had a boring holiday. _____ the time we lay on the beach.
A. Most B. Much C. Most of D. Many of
12. How _____ students are there in your class?
A. little B. few C. much D. many
13. I feel sorry for her. She has _____ friends.
A. many B. a few C. few D. a great deal of
14. I spent _____ my spare time gardening last year.
A. most of B. most C. many of D. a large number of
15. He doesn't have so _____ friends as I think.
A. much B. a great deal of C. many D. a large number of
16. With only _____ hope, Harry didn't know how to keep going another day.
A. little B. a little C. few D. a few
17. How _____ money have you got?
A. many B. much C. a lot of D. a great deal of
18. She has a lot of books, but only _____ books are interesting.
A. much B. many C. a few D. a little
19. He never spends too _____ money on his vacation.
A. much B. many C. a few D. a little
20. _____ Indian men agreed that it was unwise to confide in their wives.
A. Many B. Much C. A little D. Little

XIV. CONJUNCTIONS (LIÊN TỪ)

❖ KNOWLEDGE (KIẾN THỨC)

1. Liên từ kết hợp/ đẳng lập

CHỨC NĂNG

- Liên từ kết hợp đẳng lập: Là những từ hoặc cụm từ dùng để nối 2 từ, 2 cụm từ hay 2 mệnh đề trong câu hoặc 2 câu với nhau.

ĐẶC ĐIỂM

- Nối các từ hoặc cụm từ/ nhóm từ cùng loại, hoặc những mệnh đề ngang hàng nhau về mặt ngữ pháp (tính từ với tính từ, danh từ với danh từ .)

For, and, nor, but, or, yet, so (FANBOYS)

- She is a good **and** loyal wife.
- He is intelligent **but** very lazy.
- She says she doesn't love me, **yet** I still love her.
- We work hard, **or** we will fail the exam.
- The shops were closed, **so** I didn't get any milk.
- He will surely succeed, **for** he works hard.
- That is not what I meant to say, **nor** should you interpret my statement as an admission of guilt.

NOTES

- Sau "**nor**" bắt buộc là 1 động từ, nên nếu chủ ngữ của 2 mệnh đề khác nhau thì khi ghép lại, phải đưa động từ hoặc mượn trợ động từ đứng trước chủ ngữ của mệnh đề thứ 2.

He isn't rich, **nor do** I imagine that he ever will be.

2. Liên từ tương quan

CHỨC NĂNG

- Sử dụng theo cặp để liên kết các cụm từ/ mệnh đề có chức năng tương đương.

MỘT SỐ CẶP LIÊN TỪ TƯƠNG QUAN THƯỜNG GẶP

Both...and... (vừa ... vừa)	- Khi " Both...and " dùng để nối hai chủ ngữ, động từ chia số nhiều Both my father and my mother like dogs.
Either... or... (hoặc ... hoặc ...)	❖ Quy luật chung - Quy luật cân đối : Về đầu/ mệnh đề đầu " either, neither, both, not only " dùng với loại từ nào thì trong vế sau/ mệnh đề sau " or, nor, and, but also " cũng phải dùng với loại từ đó. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • He likes eating both fish and meat. • She neither smokes nor drinks. • He is not only deaf but also dumb. • You can speak either slowly or fast. - Quy tắc gần nhất : Nếu chủ ngữ khác nhau về số (nhiều hay ít) hay về ngôi (person) thì động từ chia theo chủ ngữ gần nhất. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Not only he but also his friend likes fish. • Either he or his sisters have been there.
Neither...nor... (không..mà cũng không ..)	
Not only... but also... (không những ..mà còn..)	
❖ Lưu ý : Not only ...but also = not only ...but...also = not only ... but...as well.	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Not only children but also grown up people love Walt Disney cartoons. • Not only children but grown up people love Walt Disney cartoons as well.
Whether...or...	Have you made a decision about whether to go to the movies or not ?
If...then (nếu ... thì)	If that is the case, then I'm not surprised about what's happening.
Not ... but	I don't want to do anything but sleep.
No sooner... than...	S + had + no sooner + VP2 + than + S + Vqk S + had + hardly/ barely/ scarcely + VP2 + when/ before + Vqk <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I had no sooner arrived home than the phone rang. • I had scarcely arrived home when the phone rang.

Hardly/ Barely	- Đảo ngữ với No sooner ...than, Hardly/ Scarcely/Barely...when... No sooner + had +S+VP2 + than + S + Vqk Hardly/Barely/ Scarcely + had +S+VP2 + when/ before + S + Vqk
Scarcely...when (vừa mới....thì đã...)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> We had no sooner left out than they came in room. → No sooner had we left out than they came in room. I had hardly arrived home when the phone rang. → Hardly had I arrived home when the phone rang.

3. Liên từ phụ thuộc

CHỨC NĂNG

- Nói các cụm từ/ mệnh đề có chức năng khác nhau – mệnh đề phụ với mệnh đề chính trong câu.

MỘT SỐ LIÊN TỪ PHỤ THUỘC THƯỜNG GẶP

Though, Although, Even though, Even if

Though (mặc dù)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Though : liên từ, thường đứng đầu câu hoặc giữa câu. Though he is poor, he is happy = Poor though he is, he is happy. (conjunction) - Though trạng từ, và thường hay đứng cuối câu. • I am busy today. We could meet tomorrow, though. (adverb)
Although (mặc dù)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Liên từ chỉ đứng đầu hay giữa câu, không bao giờ đứng cuối câu. - Nghĩa though (thường dùng hơn)/although (trang trọng hơn) giống nhau • Although/ though I don't like him, I admit that he's a good manager.
Even though (cho dù)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Có sắc thái ý nghĩa mạnh hơn although, nói về tính tất nhiên sẽ xảy ra dù với điều kiện gì đó. (express a fact) • You keep making that stupid noise even though I've asked you to stop three times.
Even if (thậm chí)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Diễn tả 1 sự việc có khả năng xảy ra, nhưng dù có hay không, nó cũng không ảnh hưởng đến sự việc ở mệnh đề chính. (used in a supposition or hypothesis). • Even if she studies hard, she won't pass the exam.

❁ PRACTICE (LUYỆN TẬP)

Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

- I don't like watching animation anymore, _____ my brother is still crazy about it.
A. also B. so C. but D. and
- He asked me to go _____ find his wallet in the office.
A. or B. so C. and D. if
- I prepared all the possible questions for the interview this morning; _____, I failed it.
A. but B. however C. for D. instead
- Skating is a good sport for players to keep fit. _____, it helps us to better control balance.

- A. When B. Additionally C. So D. But
5. _____ I'm watching a documentary on TV, my sister is cycling around the village with her friends.
- A. While B. Especially C. However D. Until
6. The teacher offered an extra test _____ the last result was bad
- A. for B. also C. before D. then
7. To protect the environment, our school started a clean-up campaign _____ planted trees on the campus.
- A. and B. when C. for D. so
8. Folk music isn't popular among teenagers, _____ I still love its melody.
- A. so B. because C. also D. but
9. My family often drink green tea _____ we already have meals.
- A. before B. then C. after D. when
10. Spring rolls are kids' favorite food _____ they're very tasty.
- A. so B. after C. both D. because
11. Many foreign tourists enjoy _____ normal dishes and traditional ones.
- A. and B. both C. but D. then
12. Now, open your textbook _____ do the exercises on page 21.
- A. also B. next C. before D. and
13. First, add sugar to water and stir well. _____, squeeze lemonade in and your lemon juice is done.
- A. Next B. And C. For D. But
14. Remember to fasten your seatbelt _____ driving.
- A. before B. after C. then D. when
15. After the death of his parents, he never smiles _____ laughs.
- A. as B. or C. instead D. however
16. The Vietnamese national team has won 2 silvers _____ 1 gold medals in the gymnastics.
- A. but B. and C. so D. also
17. I know that staying up late is a bad habit, _____ I can't give up it.
- A. after B. before C. also D. but
18. My father is a photographer who _____ writes books.
- A. and B. but C. because of D. also
19. I and my friends will go out tonight, _____ I have to finish all my homework before that.
- A. also B. and C. so D. then
20. Maria blew out candles on birthday cake and _____ made a wish.
- A. then B. but C. before D. when

Choose the underlined part in each sentence that needs correction.

1. She didn't understand what you said because of she was deaf.

A B C D

2. Because I knew her family well so I tried to help her.

A B C D

3. Although he was very bad-tempered, but everybody liked him.

A B C D

4. Because the temperature is below freezing, it actually feels quite warm when the sun is out.

A B C D

5. In spite of her obvious intelligence, she finds it difficulty to express her ideas in writing.

A B C D

6. Despite Wayne failed to score himself, he helped Ron score two goals.

A B C D

7. While horse riding is an expensive pastime, but more and more people are taking it up.

A B C D

8. Next week, when there will be an English club held here, I will give you more information

A B C

about it.

D

9. Once I read the whole passage, I understood what the author meant in the first few lines.

A B C D

10. Because your train leaves in half an hour, so you'd better hurry.

A B C D

Rewrite the sentences using and/but/or/so.

1. The child hates getting up in the morning. He also dislikes going to bed at night.

↳ The child hates _____

2. He is talented. He also has a charm.

↳ He _____

3. The street is lined with oak trees. It is also lined with elm trees.

↳ The street _____

4. The lecture was long. In addition, it was also a boring lecture.

↳ The lecture _____

5. You should choose: One, eat less; two, do more exercises.

↳ You should _____

6. The train proceeded quickly. The train proceeded smoothly.

↳ The train _____

7. The town is historical. It is picturesque too.

↳ The town _____

8. We know him. We don't know his friends.

↳ We know _____

9. They may leave today. They also may leave tomorrow.

↳ They may _____

10. I am proud to be here. I am also happy to meet you here.

↳ I am proud _____

Rewrite the sentences, using available words.

1. You don't do your homework. You will get a bad mark. You will be kicked out of school. **(if, and)**
↪ _____
2. The young boy was sent home. He refused to obey the teacher. **(Therefore)**
↪ _____
3. It cost a fortune to renovate our house. It was worth it. **(However)**
↪ _____
4. The students easily got high score in the last examination. They were well-prepared. **(so)**
↪ _____
5. He produces things quite slowly. His products are really good. **(but)**
↪ _____
6. It was raining. We still went to the park. **(However)**
↪ _____
7. She put on a warm coat before going to work. The weather is cold. **(Therefore)**
↪ _____
8. She was thinking of buying a new car. Her friend convinced her to buy an used car. **(but)**
↪ _____
9. She is loved by everybody in her factory. She is a very hard worker. **(so)**
↪ _____
10. I felt really sick last night. I couldn't come to your party. **(so)**
↪ _____

XV. ARTICLES (MẠO TỪ)

✿ KNOWLEDGE (KIẾN THỨC)

✚ Indefinite articles: a/an

- An đứng trước 1 danh từ đếm được số ít bắt đầu bằng 1 nguyên âm (u, e, o, a, i).
- A đứng trước danh từ đếm được số ít bắt đầu là 1 phụ âm.

1. "a/ an" được dùng trước:

- Danh từ đếm được, số ít. *An: đứng trước nguyên âm hoặc "h" câm.	Ex: a doctor, a bag, an animal, an hour..... Ex: an animal, an hour.....
- Trong các cấu trúc: so + adj + a/an + noun such + a/an + noun as + adj + a/an + noun + as How + adj + a/an + noun + verb!	Ex: She is so pretty a girl. - It's such a beautiful picture. - She is as pretty a girl as her sister. - How beautiful a girl you are!
- Chỉ một người được đề cập qua tên.	Ex: A Mrs. Blue sent you this letter.
- Trước các danh từ trong ngữ đồng vị.	Ex: Nguyen Du, a great poet, wrote that novel.
- Trong các cụm từ chỉ số lượng.	Ex: a pair, a couple, a lot of, a little, a few, a large/great number of.....

2. "a/ an" không được dùng:

- ONE được sử dụng thay A/An để nhấn mạnh.	Ex: There is a book on the table, but one is not enough.
--	---

- Trước danh từ không đếm được.	Ex: Coffee is also a kind of drink.
- Trước các danh từ đếm được số nhiều.	Ex: Dogs are faithful animals.

📌 Definite article: the

1. "the" được dùng trước

- Những vật duy nhất.	Ex: the sun, the moon, the world....
- Các danh từ được xác nhận bởi cụm tính từ hoặc mệnh đề tính từ.	- The house with green fence is hers. - The man that we met has just come.
- Các danh từ được xác định qua ngữ cảnh hoặc được đề cập trước đó.	Ex: Finally, the writer killed himself. - I have a book and an eraser. The book is now on the table.
- Các danh từ chỉ sự giải trí.	Ex: the theater, the concert, the church
- Trước tên các tàu thuyền, máy bay.	Ex: The Titanic was a great ship.
- Các sông, biển, đại dương, dãy núi.	Ex: the Mekong River, the East Sea, the Pacific Ocean, the Himalayas
- Một nhóm các đảo hoặc quốc gia.	Ex: the Philippines, the United States.
- Tính từ dùng như danh từ tập hợp.	Ex: You should help the poor.
- Trong so sánh nhất.	Ex: Nam is the cleverest in his class.
- Tên người ở số nhiều (chỉ gia đình)	Ex: The Blacks, The Blues, the Nams
- Các danh từ đại diện cho 1 loài.	Ex: The cat is a lovely home pet.
- Các trạng từ chỉ thời gian, nơi chốn.	Ex: in the morning, in the street, in the water.....
- Số thứ tự.	Ex: the first, the second, the third....
- Chuỗi thời gian hoặc không gian.	Ex: the next, the following, the last...

2. "the" không dùng được

- Trước các danh từ số nhiều nói chung.	Ex: They build houses near the hall.
- Danh từ trừu tượng, không đếm được.	Ex: Independence is a happy thing.
- Các danh từ chỉ màu sắc.	Ex: Red and white make pink.
- Các môn học.	Ex: Math is her worst subject.
- Các vật liệu, kim loại.	Ex: Steel is made from iron.
- Các tên nước, châu lục, thành phố.	Ex: Ha Noi is the capital of Vietnam .
- Các chức danh, tên người.	Ex: President Bill Clinton, Ba, Nga .
- Các bữa ăn, món ăn, thức ăn.	Ex: We have rice and fish for dinner .
- Các trò chơi, thể thao.	Ex: Football is a popular sport in Vietnam.

📌 PRACTICE (LUYỆN TẬP)

Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

- Don't drive into that street. It is _____ one-way street.
A. a B. an C. the D. Ø
- Sir Humphrey has been _____ MP for five years.
A. a B. an C. the D. Ø
- Did you read _____ book I lent you _____ last week.
A. a / the B. the / the C. the / X D. X / X
- I went by _____ train to _____ West of England.
A. X / a B. X / the C. X / X D. the / the
- We visited Canada and _____ United States.
A. an B. a C. X D. the
- Peru is _____ country in South America. _____ capital is Lima.

- A. a / a B. a / the C. the / the D. the / a
7. I fell in _____ love with him because of his kind nature.
A. a B. the C. X D. an
8. Do you know exactly _____ number of Siberian tigers in China?
A. a B. an C. the D. X
9. It is estimated that only 1,000 pandas remain in _____ wild.
A. a B. an C. the D. X
10. _____ friend in need is _____ friend indeed.
A. The/ the B. A/ a C. X/ X D. X/ the
11. It is estimated that about 640 women remain illiterate in _____ world.
A. a B. an C. the D. X
12. It was a beautiful day. _____ sun shone brightly in _____ sky.
A. a / a B. a / the C. the / the D. the / a
13. It is said that Robinhood robbed _____ rich and gave the money to _____ poor.
A. a / a B. a / the C. the / the D. the / a
14. This morning I bought a newspaper and a magazine. _____ newspaper is in my bag but I don't know where _____ magazine is.
A. a / a B. a / the C. the / the D. the / a
15. What is your _____ biggest dream in _____ life?
A. X/ X B. the/ a C. the/ the D. a/ the
16. Did you have _____ good time at the party last night?
A. a B. an C. the D. X
17. The local authorities are conducting _____ campaign to help _____ disabled.
A. a/ the B. the/ X C. X/ X D. X/ the
18. _____ most important thing when you take part in any examination is to be calm.
A. A B. An C. The D. X
19. Every year, thousands of tourists visit _____ Nile River.
A. a B. an C. the D. X
20. My brother-in-law is _____ engineer in a car company.
A. an B. a C. the D. X

XVI. PREPOSITIONS (GIỚI TỪ)

✿ KNOWLEDGE (KIẾN THỨC)

1. Một số giới từ cơ bản

Giới từ	Cách dùng	Ví dụ
in	tháng	in May; in March
	năm	in 2004; in 2018
	mùa	in summer; in winter
	buổi trong ngày	in the morning; in the afternoon; in the evening
	khoảng thời gian	in a minute; in three days

at	buổi trong ngày	at night; at noon
	thời gian trong ngày	at 7 o'clock; at midnight
	địp lễ	at Christmas; at Easter
	cụm từ cố định	at the same time
on	địp lễ đặc biệt	on Good Friday; on Easter Sunday; on my birthday
	buổi của 1 ngày đặc biệt	on the morning of March the 1 st
after	(sau khi) muộn hơn cái gì đó	after breakfast
ago	(cách đây bao lâu) điều gì đã xảy ra lâu rồi	2 years ago
before	(trước khi) sớm hơn cái gì đó	before Christmas
between	(Ở giữa) thời gian chia làm	between Monday and Thursday
by	không muộn hơn một mốc thời gian nào đó.	by Sunday
during	(Trong suốt) trong khoảng thời gian nào đó	during the holidays
for	khoảng thời gian	for three weeks
from... to from.. till/ until	từ... đến ...	from Monday to Wednesday from Monday till Wednesday
past	giờ hơn	23 minutes past 6 (6: 23)
since	mốc thời gian	since Monday
till/until	(cho tới khi) không muộn hơn một mốc cố định nào đó.	till tomorrow until tomorrow
to	giờ kém	23 minutes to 6 (5:37)
up to	không nhiều hơn một khoảng thời gian nào đó	up to 6 hours a day
within	(trong vòng) trong khoảng thời gian nào đó	within a day

2. Những giới từ đi kèm với các danh từ, tính từ và động từ

★ Những động từ và giới từ thường đi kèm với nhau

to be fond of	thích cái gì
to be made of	được làm bằng (chất liệu nào đó)
to differ from	khác biệt về điều gì
to look at	nhìn vào
to look after	chăm sóc (ai)
to listen to	lắng nghe (ai)
to take after	trông giống với
to talk to	nói chuyện với (ai)

to travel to	đi đến (một nơi nào đó)
to point at	chỉ vào(ai)
to take part in	tham gia vào
to participate in	tham gia
to get on a train/ a bus/airplane	lên tàu hoả/xe bus/máybay
to fill with	làm đầy, lấp đầy
to belong to	thuộc về
to think about	nghĩ về
to give up	từ bỏ
to keep on	vẫn, cứ, tiếp tục

★ **Những động từ luôn đi với giới từ “from”**

to borrow from sb/st	vay mượn của ai/ cái gì
to escape from...	thoát ra từ cái gì
to suffer from	chịu đựng đau khổ
to be away from sb/ st	xa cách cái gì/ ai
to be different from st	khác về cái gì
to be far from sb/st	xa cách ai/ cái gì
to be safe from st	an toàn trong cái gì

★ **Những động từ luôn đi kèm với giới từ “in”**

to believe in st/sb	tin tưởng cái gì/ vào ai
to help sb in st	giúp ai việc gì
to be interested in st/doing st	quan tâm cái gì/ việc gì

★ **Những từ đi kèm với giới từ “with”**

to be angry with sb	giận dữ ai
to be busy with st	bận với cái gì
to be familiar (to/with)	quen với cái gì
st to be popular with	phổ biến quen thuộc

★ **Những từ đi kèm với giới từ “to be”**

to be close to st	sát gần vào cái gì
to be contrary to sb/st	ngược với cái gì/ với ai
to be dear to sb	quý giá đối với ai
to be harmful to st	có hại cho cái gì
to be new to sb	mới với ai
to be rude to sb	thô lỗ với ai
to be useful to st	có lợi cho cái gì

★ **Những từ đi theo giới từ “at”**

to be bad at st	yếu kém về cái gì
to be good/clever at st	giỏi/sắc sảo về cái gì

★ **Những từ đi theo giới từ “for”**

to be eager for st	háo hức với cái gì
to be famous for st	nổi tiếng vì cái gì
to be ready for st	sẵn sàng làm việc gì
to be responsible for st	chịu trách nhiệm về cái gì
to be sorry for sb	xin lỗi ai
to be thankful for sb	cám ơn ai
to be sorry for V-ing/ st	hối tiếc vì đã làm gì

★ **Những từ đi kèm với giới từ “about”**

to be sorry about st lấy làm tiếc, hối tiếc về cái gì
to be curious about st tò mò về cái gì

★ **Những từ đi kèm với giới từ "on"**

to be dependent on st/ sb lệ thuộc vào cái gì / vào ai
to be intent on st tập trung tư tưởng vào cái
to be keen on st gì mê cái gì

❁ **PRACTICE (LUYỆN TẬP)**

Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. Three students were accused _____ cheating in the examination.
A. on B. off C. with D. of
2. I wrote to the company to ask them _____ more information about the job.
A. for B. in C. along D. forward
3. I'm not going out yet. I'm waiting _____ the rain to stop.
A. for B. away C. from D. up
4. Sorry I haven't written _____ you for such a long time.
A. to B. into C. for D. round
5. Who was that man I saw you talking _____ in the pub?
A. up B. back C. from D. to
6. They were playing football _____ 4 p.m. to 6 p.m. yesterday.
A. from B. within C. between D. out of
7. Sometimes Mr. Pike has to work very late _____ night to do some important experiments.
A. on B. at C. in D. for
8. I haven't gone there _____ ages.
A. with B. in C. for D. of
9. Leaves turn color _____ the autumn.
A. for B. on C. at D. in
10. Valentine's Day is celebrated _____ February 14.
A. in B. at C. on D. to
11. It happened _____ lunch-time _____ Friday.
A. at/in B. at/on C. in/on D. on/at
12. Ann is going away for a week _____ September.
A. for B. since C. at D. in
13. Tell me _____ Friday whether or not you can come to the party.
A. by B. until C. till D. in
14. I was tired this morning, so I stayed in bed _____ half past ten.
A. by B. at C. until D. for
15. The bus was late this morning, which is unusual. It's usually _____ time.
A. in B. on C. with D. among
16. I think I'd like to work _____ a farm.
A. in B. on C. above D. under
17. I think we can meet _____ the bus stop.
A. on B. at C. in D. behind
18. English is spoken all _____ the world.
A. over B. in C. above D. on
19. The train has to go _____ three tunnels.
A. across B. along C. through D. under

20. The Medical Center is close _____ the school.
 A. to B. at C. next D. from



VOCABULARIES

I. WORD FORMATION (CẤU TẠO TỪ)

❖ KNOWLEDGE (KIẾN THỨC)

Ví trí, chức năng và dấu hiệu nhận biết từ loại

DANH TỬ (NOUN)	
Vị trí của danh từ trong câu.	
1. Chủ ngữ của câu (đầu câu, đầu mệnh đề)	<u>Maths</u> is the subject I like best
2. Sau tính từ (good, beautiful...), Sau tính từ sở hữu (my, your, his, her,...). Cụm danh từ: a/ an the + (adv) + adj + N.	She is a good <u>teacher</u> . His <u>father</u> works in hospital.
3. Làm tân ngữ, sau động từ	I like <u>English</u> . We are <u>students</u> .
4. Sau "enough" (enough +N)	He didn't have enough <u>money</u> to buy that car.
5. Sau các mạo từ (a, an, the) Đại từ chỉ định (this, that, these, those); Lượng từ (each, no, any, a few, a little,..)	She is a <u>teacher</u> . This <u>book</u> is an interesting book. I have a little <u>money</u> to go to the movie.
6. Sau giới từ: in, on, of, with, under, at...	Thanh is good at <u>literature</u> .
Dấu hiệu nhận biết danh từ	
-ion (distribution), -ment (development), -er (teacher) , -or (actor), -ant (accountant), -age (marriage), -ship (friendship), -sm (enthusiasm), -ity (ability), -ness (happiness), -dom (freedom), -ist (terrorist), -ian (physician), -hood (childhood), -ance (importance), -ence (dependence), -ety (society), -ty (honesty)	
TÍNH TỬ (ADJECTIVE)	
Vị trí của tính từ trong câu	
1. Trước danh từ: (a/an/the) + (adv) + adj + N	My Tam is a <u>famous</u> singer.
2. Sau động từ liên kết: be/ seem/ appear/ feel/ taste/ look/ keep/get/ keep/ make (sb) + adj	Tom seems <u>tired</u> now The homework keeps me <u>busy</u> all the time
3. Sau "too": S+ be/ seem/look..+ too +adj..	Coffee seems too <u>hot</u> for me to drink.
4. Trước "enough": S + be + adj + enough..	She is <u>tall</u> enough to play volleyball.
5. Trong cấu trúc: so + adj + that	The weather was so <u>bad</u> that we decided to stay at home
6. Dùng dưới các dạng so sánh	Meat is more <u>expensive</u> than fish.

7. Dùng trong câu cảm thán: How + adj +S+V! What + (a/an) + adj +N!	How <u>intelligent</u> she is! What a <u>beautiful</u> girl!
Dấu hiệu nhận biết tính từ	
-ful (helpful), -less (homeless), -ly (friendly), -al (national), -ble (acceptable), -ive (active), -ous (famous), -ish (selfish), -y (foggy), -like (childlike), -ic (scientific), -ed (bored), -ing (interesting), -ary (necessary), -ant (important), -ent (different)	
TRẠNG TỪ	
Vị trí của trạng từ trong câu	
1. Trước động từ thường giữa trợ động từ và động từ thường (đặc biệt là các trạng từ chỉ tần suất: always, usually,...)	They <u>seldom</u> get up early in the morning. I have <u>recently</u> finished my homework. I don't <u>usually</u> go to school late.
2. Trước tính từ: be/ feel/look.. + adv + adj	She is <u>very</u> nice. He looks <u>extremely</u> unwell.
3. Sau "too": V(thường) + too + adv !	The teacher speaks too <u>quickly</u> .
4. Trước "enough": V(thường) + adv + enough	The teacher speaks <u>slowly</u> enough for us to understand.
5. Trong cấu trúc : V(thường) + so + adv + that	Jack drove so <u>fast</u> that he caused an accident.
6. Đứng cuối câu (trạng từ thời gian)	I finished my essay <u>last week</u> .
7. Thường đứng 1 mình ở đầu câu/ giữa câu và cách các thành phần khác của câu bằng dấu “,”	<u>Last summer</u> I came back my home country. Its raining <u>hard</u> . Tom, <u>however</u> , goes to school.
Dấu hiệu nhận biết trạng từ:	
Adv = adj + ly (beautifully, usefully, carefully, strongly, badly)	
Ngoại lệ: Một số từ có đuôi “ly” nhưng là tính từ: daily : hàng ngày, early : sớm; elderly : già, lớn tuổi; friendly : thân thiện, likely : có khả năng sẽ xảy ra; costly = đắt đỏ; lively = sinh động, lonely lẻ loi, lovely = đáng yêu, manly = nam tính; silly = ngớ ngẩn; ugly = xấu xí; unlikely : không có khả năng xảy ra; monthly : hàng tháng; weekly : hàng tuần, brotherly = như anh em; comely = duyên dáng; goodly = có duyên; homely = giản dị, lowly = hèn mọn, masterly = tài giỏi; scholarly uyên bác; shapely = dáng đẹp, timely = đúng lúc; unseemly = không phù hợp.	
ĐỘNG TỪ	
Vị trí của trạng từ trong câu	
1. Thường đứng sau chủ ngữ	Lam Anh <u>plays</u> volleyball everyday.
2. Đứng sau trạng từ chỉ tần suất	I usually <u>get up</u> late.
Dấu hiệu nhận biết động từ	
-ate (compensate), -ain (maintain); -flect (reflect), -flict (inflict); -spect (respect), -scrib (describe), -ceive (deceive), -fy (modify), -isel-ize (realize), -ude (include), -ide (devide), dus (evade), -tend (extend),...	

❁ PRACTICE (LUYỆN TẬP)

Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

- The government should take some measures to protect _____ species.
A. dangerous B. endanger C. endangered D. endangerment
- Turtles and tortoises are known to be threatened with _____.
A. extinct B. extinction C. extinctive D. extinctly
- They are going to _____ the pool to 2 meters.
A. deep B. depth C. deepen D. deeply

4. We were awarded a _____.
- A. penalty B. penalize C. penal D. penalization
5. Choosing a career is one of the most important _____ you will make in life.
- A. decide B. decisive C. decisions D. decider
6. All of the students appreciate the _____ of English learning.
- A. import B. important C. importantly D. importance
7. We can enjoy live programmes through _____ satellites.
- A. communicate B. communication C. communicative D. communicable
8. Computers are _____ used in schools and universities.
- A. widely B. wide C. width D. widen
9. She has made an _____ for the job as a nursery teacher because she likes children.
- A. apply B. applicant C. application D. applicator
10. Daisy has been out of work for 3 months. She stays at home and does the housework _____.
- A. disappoint B. disappointed C. disappointedly D. disappointing

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to show the underlined part that needs correction.

1. To prepare his science works, Faraday often spent whole days in the laboratory.
- A B C D
2. They ride their bicycle to the countryside for please.
- A B C D
3. He was sadness because he couldn't pay his debts.
- A B C D
4. The representatives joining the festival were from different national.
- A B C D
5. The teacher often courage the students to ask questions.
- A B C D
6. In some countries, black people do not have equal with white people.
- A B C D
7. Many industry developed countries spend much money preventing environmental pollution.
- A B C D
8. When foreigners ask him, he answers in English automatic.
- A B C D
9. Special drugs should be manufacture and dispensed carefully.
- A B C D
10. He often went to work late, consequence he was sacked.
- A B C D
11. We should learn all the new words by heart in order to rich our vocabulary.
- A B C D

II. PHRASAL VERBS (CỤM ĐỘNG TỪ)

❁ KNOWLEDGE (KIẾN THỨC)

STT	Cấu trúc	Nghĩa
1	Act out	Đóng vai, đóng kịch
2	Account for	Chiếm bao nhiêu %, giải thích
3	Ask for st	Xin cái gì
	Ask after	Hỏi thăm
	Ask sb out	Mời ai đó đi ăn/đi xem phim để hẹn hò
4	Break down	Chia nhỏ ra, hỏng hóc, ngắt xiu
	Break into	Đột nhập vào
	Break out	Nổ ra
	Break up	Chia tay
5	Bring sb up	Nuôi nấng ai
	Bring out	Làm nổi bật
	Bring about	Gây ra, mang lại
	Bring back	Mang lại, gọi nhớ
6	Blow out	Thối tắt
7	Build up	Tăng lên, ca ngợi
8	Breathe in = take in = inhale	Hít vào
9	Calm down	Bình tĩnh
10	Clear out	Cuốn xéo, dọn sạch
11	Care for	Chăm sóc, thích
	Care about	Quan tâm
12	Clean up	Dọn dẹp
13	Call for	Cần, đòi hỏi, yêu cầu
	Call out	Gọi to, hét to
	Call off	Hủy
	Call up	Gọi cho ai/gọi đi lính
	Carry on	Tiếp tục
	Carry out	Tiến hành, thực hiện
	Carry away	Phấn khích, kích động
	Carry over	Chuyển vào, đi vào
14	Cut down	chặt/ đốn
	Cut off	cắt, cúp, ngừng cung cấp (điện, gas...)
	Cut in	xen vào, ngắt lời
	Cut down on	cắt giảm
15	Crop up = happen or appear unexpectedly	Xảy ra một cách bất ngờ
16	Come up with	Nảy ra ý tưởng
	Come into	Thừa kế
	Come up	Xảy ra
	Come out	Lộ ra, lộ ra, tung ra, phát hành
	Come on	Thôi nào, tiếp tục nào

	Come off Come across Come in Come in for Come around Come up to	Thành công Tình cờ gặp Bước vào Chuốc lấy, nhận lấy Tình lại Đạt tới
17	Dip into	Đọc lướt
18	Die out Die of	Tuyệt chủng Chết vì bệnh gì
19	Dress up	Cải trang, đóng giả
20	Drop out of Drop in on = pay a short visit	Bỏ cuộc Tạt qua, ghé qua
21	Fall over	Đổ sụp xuống, ngã, phá sản
	Fall for	Mê tít, yêu ai
	Fall behind	Tụt lại, chậm lại
	Fall back on	Phải cần tới, phải dùng tới
	Fall out with	Cãi cọ với
22	Fill in	Điền vào mẫu đơn
	Fill up	Đổ đầy, làm đầy
	Fill out	Mập ra, béo ra
23	Grow up	Lớn lên
24	Jot down = note down	Ghi tóm tắt
25	Go through	Trải qua
	Go ahead	Tiến hành
	Go on with st = continue with st	Tiếp tục với cái gì
	Go out	Mất điện, ra ngoài, đi chơi
	Go on = continue	Tiếp tục
	Go away	Đi xa, đi đi, rút đi
	Go back	Quay lại
	Go back on	Thất hứa
	Go beyond	Vượt quá
	Go off	Đổ chuông, nổ tung, thiu thối, mất hứng
	Go over	Xem lại, ôn lại
	Go by	Trôi qua, tuột mất
	Go up >> go down	Tăng lên >> giảm xuống
	Go down with	Mắc bệnh
	Go in for	Thích thú, tham gia
Go into	Điều tra, xem xét	
26	Get around = travel	Đi lại
	Get over = recover from	Vượt qua cú sốc/bệnh tật
	Get through	Vượt qua kì thi, hoàn thành
	Get into	Quan tâm, hứng thú với cái gì
	Get by	Xoay sở để sống qua khó khăn
	Get off	Xuống xe/tàu/máy bay
	Get on	lên xe/tàu/máy bay
27	Give up = stop = quit	Từ bỏ

	Give off Give in Give out Give away	Tỏa ra, nhả ra, thải ra Nhân nhượng Cạn kiệt Tiết lộ, phân phát
28	Hold up = delay Hold back Hold on Hold over	Đình trệ, trì hoãn Ngăn lại Chờ; giữ chắc; cầm Hoãn
29	Hurry up	Nhanh lên
30	Hand out Hand in	Phân phát Nộp
31	Keep up/pace with = catch up with Keep on Keep away Keep in with	Theo kịp, đuổi kịp Tiếp tục Tránh xa Duy trì mối quan hệ tốt đẹp với ai
32	Look up	Tra cứu
	Look after = take care of	Chăm sóc
	Look around	Ngó nghiêng, thăm thú
	Look down on	Coi thường
	Look up to	Kính trọng
	Look at	Ngắm nhìn
	Look for	Tìm kiếm
	Look forward to	Mong chờ
	Look into	Điều tra, xem xét
	Look out (for)	Coi chừng, trông chừng
	Look over	Xem qua
33	Lie down	Nằm nghỉ
34	Lay down	Đề ra
35	Mull over	Suy nghĩ kĩ
36	Make up for	Bù đắp cho
	Make up	Trang điểm, bịa đặt, dựng chuyện, quyết định, làm hòa, chiếm (tỉ lệ, %)
	Be made up of	Tạo nên bởi
	Make away with	Cuỗm đi
	Make for	Tiến về hướng
	Make out	Nhìn, nhận ra, hiểu
37	Pick up	Nhặt; đón
38	Point at	Chỉ vào
39	Pray for	Cầu nguyện
40	Pass away = die	Qua đời/ chết
	Pass down	Lưu truyền, truyền lại
	Pass over	Lờ đi, né tránh
41	Put up with = tolerate	Chịu đựng
	Put across	Trình bày, giải thích
	Put on	Mặc, đội; biểu diễn

	Put off	Trì hoãn; khiến cho ai không còn thích nữa
	Put aside	Để dành
	Put away	Dọn đi, cất đi, để dành
	Put back	Trả lại (đưa về đúng vị trí)
	Put through	Kết nối điện thoại
	Put up	Dựng lên
	Put sb up	Cho ai đó ở nhờ
	Put out	Dập tắt
42	Pull down	ủi đổ, phá bỏ
43	Result in	Dẫn đến
44	Run on st	Chạy bằng cái gì
	Run off	Bỏ đi, rửa trôi
	Run out of st	Hết sạch, hết nhãn cái gì
	Run out	Cạn kiệt
	Slow down	Làm giảm
	Speed up	Tăng tốc
45	Settle down	ổn định, định cư
46	Start up	Khởi nghiệp
47	Save up	Tiết kiệm
48	Set out	Bắt đầu thực hiện một kế hoạch/ hành động
	Set up	Thành lập
	Set off	Khởi hành
49	Stand in for sb	Làm thay cho ai
	Stand up	Đứng lên
	Stand for	Viết tắt, tượng trưng cho
	Stand out	Nổi bật
	Stand up for	ủng hộ
50	Ponder on/upon/over	Suy nghĩ về, cân nhắc về; trầm tư
51	Show off	Khoe khoang
	Show up = turn up = arrive	Đến
52	Stay up	Thức
53	Spread over	Kéo dài
54	Think back on = recall	Hồi tưởng lại, nhớ lại
55	Talk back to sb	Cãi lại, nói lại
56	Take after	Giống
	Take off	Cởi, cất cánh, thành công
	Take in	Hấp thụ, hít vào, hiểu
	Take out	Nhổ, đổ
	Take away	Mang đi, kéo theo
	Take on	Đảm nhiệm, thuê mướn
	Take over	Tiếp quản, chiếm đoạt
	Take up	Bắt đầu một thói quen/sở thích
57	Turn on >> turn off	Bật >> tắt
	Turn up = show up = arrive	Đến
	Turn into	Biến thành

	Turn out	Hóa ra
	Turn down	Từ chối, vắn nhỏ
58	Try out = test Try on	Kiểm tra Thử đồ
59	Throw away	Vứt đi
60	Wipe out	Xóa sổ
61	Wake up	Thức giấc
62	Wind down = relax	Thư giãn
63	Wait for sb/st	Đợi ai/đợi cái gì
64	Wash away Wash up	Cuốn trôi Giặt, rửa
65	Use up = run out	Dùng hết, cạn kiệt

❁ PRACTICE (LUYỆN TẬP)

Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

- Since Carl was unable to pay his bill, after a couple of months, his telephone was
A. cut off B. broken up C. dropped off D. rung up
- I can _____ the house being messy, but I hate it if it's not clean.
A. lead up to B. come up with C. go down with D. put up with
- Belinda Harrell _____ taking her driving test until she finally passed it on her twenty-first attempt.
A. kept on B. cleared off C. used up D. wore out
- James is now too old to live on his own, so he is being _____ by his daughter.
A. found out B. brought up C. moved on D. looked after
- We arranged to meet at the station, but she didn't _____.
A. get through B. turn up C. walk out D. wait on
- Don't worry we'll have to wait a little longer because I'm sure he will _____.
A. turn down B. turn in C. turn into D. turn up
- When they _____ for the beach the sun was shining, but by the time they arrived it had clouded over.
A. went out B. went off C. set off D. left out
- When Mr. Spendthrift ran out of money, he _____ his mother for help.
A. fell back on B. fell upon C. fell behind D. fell in with
- If you can't remember his phone number, you can always _____ it _____ in the phone book.
A. take/down B. look/up C. find/out D. bring/about
- The train to the center of the city was _____ by a heavy snowfall.
A. held up B. took back C. put off D. given out
- My hat has just _____ behind the sofa although I thought I had lost it.
A. turned up B. gone away C. run into D. come across
- Jim's _____ flu again. That's the third time this year.
A. gone down with B. put up with C. led up to D. come up with
- Considering how little they have got in common, it's surprising how well they _____ together.
A. get through B. get on C. get down D. get up

14. Her brother was offered the manager's job, but he _____. He said he didn't want the responsibilities.
 A. turned it off B. turned it down C. threw it away D. put it off
15. Roger Federer couldn't _____ the possibility of withdrawing from the championship because of injury.
 A. rule out B. pass over C. come off D. do without
16. He is disappointed at not being offered the job, but I think he will _____ it.
 A. turn off B. fill in C. get over D. take after
17. Lucy was late for school this morning because the alarm didn't _____ as usual.
 A. ring off B. go off C. get off D. take off
18. His son _____ him so much that we can't see any differences between them.
 A. takes after B. looks up C. takes in D. looks over
19. My sister-in-law is beloved by all my relatives for she can _____ all right after getting married.
 A. get on well with B. get up C. get over D. get out of
20. I know we had an argument, but now I'd quite like to _____.
 A. look down B. make up C. fall out D. bring up

III. COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGES (GIAO TIẾP)

❁ KNOWLEDGE (KIẾN THỨC)

1. Lời mời và cách đáp lại lời mời

Tình huống mẫu	Đồng ý	Từ chối
- Would you like a cup of coffee? (Bạn có muốn một tách cà phê không?)	- Yes, please. (Vâng, cảm ơn). - I'd love to, thanks. (Mình rất hân hạnh, cảm ơn). - That's very kind of you, thanks.	- I'm sorry to refuse your invitation. (Tôi rất tiếc phải từ chối lời mời của bạn). - I can't, sorry. I have to work. (Tôi không thể, xin lỗi nhé. Tôi có việc rồi). - Thanks for your invitation but I'm busy now. (Cảm ơn bạn đã mời nhưng giờ tôi bận rồi). - I'm afraid I won't be able to come. (Tôi e là không thể tới được). - I'm afraid I am busy tomorrow. (Tôi e là ngày mai tôi bận rồi). - Sorry, I'd love to but I have an appointment. (Xin lỗi nha, tôi rất thích nhưng tôi có cuộc hẹn rồi).
- Would you like to come to my party this Saturday? (Bạn có muốn tới bữa tiệc của mình thứ Bảy tuần này không?)	- It's very nice of you, thanks. (Bạn thật tốt, cảm ơn). - That sounds lovely, thanks. (Nghe thú vị đó, cảm ơn). - Thank you for your kind invitation. (Cảm ơn vì lời mời của bạn). - I'll be glad to do so. (Tôi rất vui được làm thế). - Thanks, I'd like that very much. (Cảm ơn nhé, tôi thích như vậy lắm). - That's a great idea. (Thật là ý tưởng tuyệt vời). - Thanks for inviting me. (Cảm	
- Would you care to join us? (Bạn muốn tham gia cùng chúng tôi không?)		
- Do you want to go out with me tonight? (Bạn có muốn đi chơi cùng mình tối nay không?)		
- Do you feel like going for a walk?		

(Bạn có muốn đi dạo không?)	<p>ơn đã mời tôi).</p> <p>- Many thanks for your kind invitation. I'll join you. (Cảm ơn rất nhiều vì lời mời. Tôi sẽ tới).</p> <p>- With pleasure! (Rất sẵn lòng).</p> <p>- Sure. (Chắc chắn rồi).</p> <p>- Yeah, why not! (Vâng, sao lại không nhỉ).</p> <p>- Sounds good. (Nghe thú vị đấy).</p>	<p>- I really don't think I can, sorry. (Mình nghĩ là mình không thể rồi. Xin lỗi nha).</p> <p>- That's very kind of you, but I can't accept your invitation. (Bạn thật tốt nhưng mình lại không nhận lời được rồi).</p>
-----------------------------	---	--

2. Lời yêu cầu, đề nghị và cách đáp lại

2.1. Hỏi xin phép làm gì và cách đáp lại

Tình huống mẫu	Đồng ý	Từ chối
<p>- Can I borrow your books? (Mình có thể mượn những cuốn sách của bạn không?)</p> <p>- Could I have some cake? (Con có thể ăn một chút bánh không?)</p> <p>- Could I possibly sit here? (Tôi có thể ngồi ở đây không?)</p> <p>- Is it OK/ all right if I open the window? (Có được không nếu tôi mở cửa sổ ra?)</p>	<p>- Yes, sure. / Yes, of course. (Chắc chắn là được chứ.)</p> <p>- Yes, that's fine. (Được mà).</p> <p>- Certainly. (Chắc chắn rồi)</p> <p>- Of course, you can. (Chắc chắn là có thể rồi).</p>	<p>- Well, I'm afraid...(+ lý do) (Mình e là.....)</p> <p>- Well, the problem is... (Ồ, vấn đề là....)</p>
<p>- Do you mind if I turn on the TV? (Bạn có phiền không nếu tôi bật ti vi lên?)</p>	<p>- No, not at all. (Không, không sao đâu).</p> <p>- No, of course not. (Tất nhiên là không rồi).</p>	<p>- Sorry, but... (Xin lỗi nhưng.....)</p>
<p>- May I help you? (Mình có thể giúp bạn không?)</p>	<p>-Yes, please. (Vâng. Làm ơn).</p>	<p>- Thank you. I'll do it. (Cảm ơn. Mình sẽ tự làm).</p>
<p>- Can I have the bill? (Cho tôi cái hóa đơn được không?)</p>	<p>- Just a moment/ minute. (Chờ một phút ạ).</p>	
<p>- Can I bring my friends to the party? (Mình có thể đưa bạn tới bữa tiệc cùng không?)</p>	<p>- The more the merrier. (Càng đông càng vui).</p>	

2.2. Lời đề nghị, yêu cầu và cách đáp lại

Tình huống mẫu	Đồng ý	Từ chối
<p>- Can you help me with this exercise? (Bạn có thể giúp tôi bài tập này không?)</p> <p>- Could you close the door ? (Bạn có thể đóng cửa vào không?)</p> <p>- Will you help me give this</p>	<p>Yes, sure.</p> <p>Yes, of course.</p>	<p>Well, I'm afraid + (lý do).</p> <p>Well, the problem is...</p>

letter to him? <i>(Bạn sẽ giúp tôi đưa lá thư này cho anh ấy chứ?)</i> - Would you make dinner today? <i>(Bạn sẽ nấu bữa tối nay nhé?)</i> - Do you mind turning off the lights before going out? <i>(Bạn có thể tắt hết điện trước khi ra khỏi nhà không?)</i> Would you mind cleaning the house? <i>(Anh có thể lau nhà được không?)</i>	Certainly. <i>(Tất nhiên là được rồi).</i> No, not at all. Of course not. <i>(Tất nhiên là không rồi).</i>	<i>(Ồ, mình e là...)</i> <i>(Ồ, vấn đề là...)</i> Sorry, but.... <i>(Xin lỗi, nhưng....)</i>
--	--	--

3. Lời gợi ý và cách đáp lại

Tình huống mẫu	Đồng ý	Từ chối
- Let's go out for lunch. <i>(Cùng ra ngoài ăn trưa đi.)</i> - What about going to the beach this summer? <i>(Thế đi tới bãi biển mùa hè này thì sao?)</i> - How about cooking at home? <i>(Thế thì nấu cơm ở nhà nhé?)</i> - Why don't we eat some fruit now? <i>(Sao chúng ta không ăn một ít trái cây nhỉ?)</i> - Couldn't we go to the park? <i>(Chúng ta có thể tới công viên không?)</i> - Shall we go by train? <i>(Hãy cùng đi tàu nhé?)</i> - Does it matter if we leave a bit earlier? <i>(Có sao không nếu chúng ta rời đi sớm hơn?)</i>	- Yes, I'd love to. /Yes, I'd like to. <i>(Mình rất thích).</i> - What a good idea! <i>(Đúng là ý tưởng hay).</i> - Why not? <i>(Sao lại không nhỉ)</i> - Yes, that sounds like a great idea. <i>(Được, nghe có vẻ là ý kiến hay đấy).</i> - Yes, that's not a bad idea. <i>(Được, ý tưởng không tồi).</i> - Count me in too. <i>(Mình tham gia cùng nhé)</i> - Yes, let's. <i>(Được, cùng làm nhé.)</i> - It sounds good to me/ Sounds good to me. <i>(Nghe hay đó).</i> - I'm up for it. <i>(Mình đồng ý nha).</i> - Let's do that. <i>(Quyết định vậy đi).</i> - I can't agree more. <i>(Đồng ý tuyệt đối).</i>	- No, let's not. <i>(Không, đừng làm thế).</i> - Well, I'd rather/ I prefer... <i>(Ồ, mình thích... hơn)</i> - I don't feel like it. <i>(Mình thấy không thích lắm).</i> - No, thanks. <i>(Không cảm ơn).</i> - I'm not sure. <i>(Mình cũng không chắc).</i> - I don't think that's a good idea. <i>(Tớ không nghĩ đó là ý hay đâu).</i> - We had better not... <i>(Tốt nhất là ta không nên...)</i> - We had better/ we should ... <i>(chúng ta nên).</i>

4. Lời xin lỗi và cách đáp lại:

Tình huống mẫu	Chấp nhận lời xin lỗi
Sorry, I'm late.	- It doesn't matter <i>(Chuyện đó không có gì quan trọng đâu).</i> - Don't apologize <i>(Không cần phải xin lỗi đâu).</i> - That's all right, <i>(Ồn thôi).</i> - It's alright. <i>(Ồn thôi).</i>

(Xin lỗi mình đến muộn).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - It's okay. (Không sao). - Don't mention it. (Không sao đâu). - Never mind. (Đừng bận tâm). - No worries. (Đừng lo gì nhé). - I quite understand. (Tôi thông cảm mà/ Tôi hiểu mà).
--------------------------	---

5. Lời cảm ơn và cách đáp lại

Tình huống mẫu	Cách đáp lại
Thank you for helping me. (Cảm ơn vì đã giúp mình).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - That's all right! (Không có gì cả đâu!) - You're welcome. (Không có gì). - Don't mention it. (Đừng nhắc đến việc đó./không có gì đáng phải bận tâm đâu). - Not at all. (Không có gì cả đâu!) - It's nothing. (Không có gì). - My pleasure. (Giúp đỡ anh/chị là niềm vinh hạnh cho tôi).

6. Khi đưa ý kiến và cách đáp lại

Tình huống mẫu:

- **I think we should** start with the observation. (Mình nghĩ chúng ta nên bắt đầu từ việc quan sát).
- **In my opinion**, this should be kept confidential! (Theo tôi, việc này nên được giữ bí mật).

Đồng ý	Đồng ý một phần	Phản đối
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - I completely/ absolutely agree with you. (Tôi hoàn toàn đồng ý với bạn). - There is no doubt about it that... (Hoàn toàn không có nghi ngờ gì về điều đó). - I can't/couldn't agree (with you) more. (Tôi không thể đồng ý hơn được nữa). - I completely agree. (Tôi hoàn toàn đồng ý). - That's so true. (Điều đó đúng đấy). - Absolutely. (Hoàn toàn là như vậy). - Exactly. (Chính xác). - Of course. (Tất nhiên). - You're absolutely right. (Bạn hoàn toàn đúng). - Yes, I agree. (Vâng, tôi đồng ý)- - I think so too. (Tôi cũng nghĩ vậy). - That's a good idea. (Đó là một ý kiến hay). - I don't think so either. (Tôi cũng không nghĩ vậy - đồng ý với việc ai phản đối điều gì) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - I agree up to a point, but... (Tôi đồng ý một mặt với việc này, nhưng...) - That's true but... (Điều đó đúng, nhưng...) - You could be right. (Có thể bạn đúng...) - It sounds interesting, but... (Điều đó nghe thú vị, nhưng...) - I see your point, but... (Tôi hiểu quan điểm của anh nhưng...) - That's partly true, but... (Điều đó đúng một phần, nhưng...) - I can agree with that only with reservations. (Tôi chỉ có thể đồng ý với anh một cách hạn chế) - That seems obvious, but... (Điều đó có vẻ hiển nhiên, nhưng). - That is not necessarily so. (Cái đó cũng không cần thiết phải như vậy). - It is not as simple as it seems. (Nó không đơn giản như vậy đâu). - I agree with you in principle, but... (Nói chung, tôi đồng ý với 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - I totally disagree. (Tôi hoàn toàn phản đối). - I don't think so! (Mình không nghĩ thế). - No way (Không đời nào) - I'm afraid, I can't agree with you. (Tôi e là tôi không thể đồng tình với bạn). - To be honest,... (Thành thực mà nói thì) - On the contrary,... (Ngược lại...) - I don't agree with you. (Tôi không đồng ý với anh). - I'm sorry, but I disagree. (Rất tiếc nhưng tôi không đồng ý). - It's out of question. (Điều đó là không thể). - That's different. (Cái đó khác). - However,... (Tuy nhiên) - That's not entirely true. (Cái đó hoàn toàn không đúng) - Yes, but don't you think... (Vâng, nhưng sao bạn không nghĩ là...)

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - So do I. (Tôi cũng vậy). - I'd go along with that. (Tôi thuận theo điều đó). - That's true. (Đúng đấy). - Neither do I. (Tôi cũng không nghĩ vậy - đồng ý với việc ai phản đối điều gì). - I agree with you entirely. (Tôi hoàn toàn đồng ý với bạn). - That's just what I was thinking. (Đó cũng là điều tôi đang nghĩ). - You can say that again! 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> bạn, nhưng...) - I agree with you in part, but... (Tôi một phần đồng ý với bạn, nhưng). - Well, you could be right. (ừm, bạn có thể đã đúng). 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - That's not the same thing at all. (Không phải lúc nào cũng như vậy). - I'm not so sure about that. (Tôi không chắc về điều đó). - The problem is that... (Vấn đề là...) - I (very much) doubt whether... (Tôi nghi ngờ rất nhiều liệu rằng).
---	---	---

7. Một số tình huống khác

Tình huống mẫu	Cách đáp lại
Khi gặp ai đó lần đầu tiên: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Hello. Nice to meet you! (Xin chào, rất vui được gặp bạn). 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Nice/ Glad to meet you, too. (Mình cũng rất vui khi được gặp bạn). - How do you do? (Hân hạnh được làm quen).
Khi gặp ai đó và chúc: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Have a nice day! (Chúc một ngày tốt lành!) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - You too. - The same to you! - Thank you, the same to you. - You do the same! (Cảm ơn. Bạn cũng vậy nhé!)
Khi ai đó khen/ chúc mừng điều gì: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - What a nice car! (Xe đẹp quá) - You look so lovely! (Trông bạn rất đáng yêu!) - I appreciate your contribution! (Tôi đánh giá cao đóng góp của anh!) - Congratulations! (Xin chúc mừng). 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - I'm glad you like it. (Mình vui khi bạn thích nó). - I'm glad you think so. (Mình vui khi bạn nghĩ vậy). - Thank you. (Cảm ơn nhé). - It' (very) nice of you to say so. (Bạn thật tốt khi nói như vậy)- - Thank you (very much) for saying so. (Cảm ơn bạn vì đã nói vậy).
Trước khi ăn: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Bon appetite! (Chúc ngon miệng) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Bon appetite! - Enjoy your meal! (Chúc ngon miệng).
Khi ai đó nhờ đưa vật gì: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Could you please pass me the salt? (Bạn có thể đưa cho tôi lọ muối không?) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Here you are! (Của bạn đây).
Khi được tặng quà	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - That's very kind (nice/thoughtful) of you! (Bạn thật tốt/ chu đáo).
Khi người bán hàng hỏi: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Do you need anything else? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - That's all. Thank you! (Vậy là đủ rồi. Xin cảm ơn).

Khi ai đó thông báo tin vui: - I've passed my driving exam. (Minh đã đỗ kỳ thi lái xe.)	- That's great. Congratulations! (Tuyệt quá. Chúc mừng nhé).
Khi ai đó hỏi: - How are you? (Bạn thế nào?)	Trạng thái rất tốt: - Very well, thanks. (And you?) Rất tuyệt, cảm ơn cậu. (Còn cậu?) - Pretty fair. (Rất tuyệt). - I'm on the top of the world. (Minh đang rất sung sướng đây). - Can't complain. (Không chê vào đâu được). Trạng thái bình thường, không có gì đặc biệt: - I'm fine/ good/ great, thanks/ So so, thanks/ I'm OK, thanks. (Tôi ổn, cảm ơn cậu). - I'm alright. (Tôi bình thường). Trạng thái không tốt lắm: - Really bad. (Rất tệ). - I'm not on a good mood. (Không được tốt lắm).
Khi ai đó phàn nàn về điều gì	Đáp lại một cách tích cực: - I'm so sorry, but this will never occur / happen again. (Tôi xin lỗi, chuyện này sẽ không bao giờ lặp lại nữa). - I'm sorry, we promise never to make the same mistake again. (Tôi xin lỗi, chúng tôi hứa sẽ không mắc lại lỗi đó nữa). - I'm really sorry; we'll do our utmost/best not to do the same mistake again. (Chúng tôi thành thật xin lỗi. Chúng tôi sẽ cố gắng để không lặp lại lỗi đó). Đáp lại một cách tiêu cực: - Sorry, there is nothing we can do about it. (Xin lỗi. Chúng tôi không thể làm gì với điều đó). - I'm afraid, there isn't much we can do about it. (Tôi rất tiếc. Chúng tôi không thể làm gì nhiều hơn). - We are sorry but the food is just alright.

❁ PRACTICE (LUYỆN TẬP)

Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. Hung: "I think we should save energy at home as well as at school."

Lan: "_____"

A. Yes, we think.

B. That's a good idea

C. Yes, we do.

D. No, we don't.

2. Hoa: "Wow! What a nice coat you are wearing!"

Mai: "_____"

A. Certainly. Do you like it, too?

B. I like you to say that.

C. Yes, of course. It's expensive.

D. Thanks. My mother bought it for me.

3. A: "I'm taking my first exam next week."

B: "_____"

A. Well done!

B. Good luck

C. Congratulations!

D. Cheers!

4. A: "Would you mind if I smoke here?"

B: "_____"

- A. I'm sorry B. Yes, I'd love to C. I'd rather you didn't D. No, I don't
5. Minh: " Personally, I love peaceful and quiet life in rural areas."
Phong: " _____"
A. Neither B. No, I won't C. so do I D. Yes, I like it
6. A: " How about going to Paris for our next holiday?"
B: " _____"
A. No, I don't B. sounds great! C. What a pity! D. Well done!
7. Nga : " We've passed the first round."
Hoa: " _____"
A. That's a good idea . B. It's nice of you to say so.
C. Do you? D. Congratulations!
8. A: " It was very kind of you to invite me to dinner."
B: " _____"
A. It's my pleasure. B. Don't worry. C. Thank you ! D. Oh it's great.
9. Nam: " I don't go out much these days."
Giang: " _____"
A. I don't too B. I don't neither C. Me too D. Neither do I
10. Linh : " I'm afraid I failed my driving test "
Trinh : " _____"
A. I'm sorry. B. Never mind. Better luck next time!
C. Oh dear. I don't think I can. D. Oh, I think you shouldn't.

IV. WORD-CHOICE (CHỌN TỪ)

❖ KNOWLEDGE (KIẾN THỨC)

THEME 1: LOCAL ENVIRONMENT

New words

1. artisan	/ɑ:ti'zæn/	(n)	thợ làm nghề thủ công
2. attraction	/ə'trækʃn/	(n)	điểm hấp dẫn
3. authenticity	/ɔ:θen'tisəti/	(n)	thật
4. cast	/kɑ:st/	(v)	đúc (đồng...)
5. craft	/krɑ:ft/	(n)	nghề thủ công
6. craftsman	/'krɑ:ftsmən/	(n)	thợ làm đồ thủ công
7. cross	/krɒs/	(v)	đan chéo
8. drumhead	/drʌmhed/	(n)	mặt trống
9. embroider	/im'brɔɪdə/	(v)	thêu
10. frame	/freɪm/	(n)	khung
11. handicraft	/'hændɪkrɑ:ft/	(n)	sản phẩm thủ công
12. lacquerware	/'lækəweə/	(n)	đồ sơn mài
13. layer	/'leɪə/	(n)	lớp (lá...)
14. mould	/məʊld/	(v)	đổ khuôn, tạo khuôn
15. preserve	/pri'zɜ:v/	(v)	bảo vệ, bảo tồn
16. remind	/ri'maɪnd/	(v)	gợi nhớ
17. sculpture	/'skʌlptʃə/	(n)	điêu khắc, đồ điêu khắc

18. set off	/set ɒf/	(ph.v)	khởi hành
19. strip	/stri:p/	(n)	dải
20. surface	/'sɜ:fɪs/	(n)	bề mặt
21. team-building	/'ti:m-'bɪldɪŋ/	(adj)	xây dựng đội ngũ
22. thread	/θred/	(n)	sợi
23. treat	/'tri:t/	(v)	xử lí (chất thải...)
24. turn up	/'tɜ:n ʌp/	(ph.v)	xuất hiện, đến
25. weave	/'wi:v/	(v)	đan (rổ, rá...), dệt (vải...)
26. workshop	/'wɜ:kʃɒp/	(n)	công xưởng, xưởng

THEME 2: CITY LIFE

New words

1. fabulous	/'fæbjələs/	(adj)	tuyệt vời, tuyệt diệu
2. reliable	/'rɪlaɪəbl/	(adj)	đáng tin cậy
3. metropolitan	/,metrə'pɒlɪtən/	(adj)	(thuộc về) đô thị, thủ phủ
4. multicultural	/,mʌlti'kʌltʃərəl/	(adj)	đa văn hóa
5. variety	/'vəriəti/	(n)	sự phong phú, đa dạng
6. grow up	/'grəʊ ʌp/	(ph.v)	lớn lên, trưởng thành
7. packed	/'pækt/	(adj)	chật ních người
8. urban	/'ɜ:bən/	(adj)	(thuộc) đô thị, thành thị
9. Oceania	/,əʊsi'ɑ:nɪə/	(n)	châu Đại Dương
10. medium-sized	/'mi:diəm-saɪz/	(adj)	cỡ vừa, cỡ trung
11. forbidden	/'fɔ:bɪdn/	(adj)	bị cấm
12. easy-going	/'i:zi-'gəʊɪŋ/	(adj)	thoải mái, dễ tính
13. downtown	/,daʊn'taʊn/	(adj)	(thuộc) trung tâm thành phố
14. skyscraper	/'skaɪskreɪpə/	(n)	nhà cao chọc trời
15. stuck	/'stʌk/	(adj)	mắc kẹt, không di chuyển được
16. wander	/'wɒndə/	(v)	đi lang thang
17. affordable	/'əfɔ:dəbl/	(adj)	(giá cả) phải chăng
18. conduct	/'kɒn'dʌkt/	(v)	thực hiện
19. determine	/'dɪ'tɜ:mɪn/	(v)	xác định
20. factor	/'fæktə/	(n)	yếu tố
21. conflict	/'kɒnflɪkt/	(n)	xung đột
22. indicator	/'ɪndɪkətə/	(n)	chỉ số
23. asset	/'æset/	(n)	tài sản
24. urban sprawl	/'ɜ:bən sprɔ:l/		sự đô thị hóa
25. index	/'ɪndeks/	(n)	chỉ số
26. metro	/'metrəʊ/	(n)	tàu điện ngầm
27. dweller	/'dwelə/	(n)	cư dân
28. negative	/'negətɪv/	(adj)	tiêu cực
29. for the time being	/'fə(r) ðə taɪm 'bi:ɪŋ/		hiện thời, trong lúc này

THEME 3: TEEN STRESS AND PRESSURE

New words

1. adolescence	/,ædə'lesns/	(n)	giai đoạn vị thành niên
2. adulthood	/'ædʌlthʊd/	(n)	giai đoạn trưởng thành

3. calm	/kɑ:m/	(adj)	bình tĩnh
4. cognitive skill	/'kɒgnətɪv skɪl/		kỹ năng tư duy
5. concentrate	/kɒnsntreɪt/	(v)	tập trung
6. confident	/'kɒnfɪdənt/	(adj)	tự tin
7. delighted	/dɪ'laɪtɪd/	(adj)	vui sướng
8. depressed	/dɪ'prest/	(adj)	tuyệt vọng
9. embarrassed	/ɪm'bærəst/	(adj)	xấu hổ
10. emergency	/ɪ'mɜ:dʒənsi/	(n)	trình huống khẩn cấp
11. frustrated	/frʌ'streɪtɪd/	(adj)	bực bội (vì không giải quyết được việc gì)
12. helpline	/'helplɪn/	(n)	đường dây nóng trợ giúp
13. house-keeping skill	/haus-'ki:pɪŋ skɪl/		kỹ năng làm việc nhà
14. independence	/'ɪndɪ'pendəns/	(n)	sự độc lập, tự lập
15. informed decision	/ɪn'fɔ:md dɪ'sɪʒn/	(n)	quyết định có cân nhắc
16. left out	/left aʊt/	(adj)	cảm thấy bị bỏ rơi, bị cô lập
17. life skill	/laɪf skɪl/		kỹ năng sống
18. relaxed	/'rɪ'læksɪd/	(adj)	thoải mái, thư giãn
19. resolve conflict	/'rɪ:zɒlv 'kɒnflɪkt/	(v)	giải quyết xung đột
20. risk taking	/'rɪsk teɪkɪŋ/	(n)	liều lĩnh
21. self-aware	/self-ə'veə(r)/	(adj)	tự nhận thức, ngộ ra
22. self-disciplined	/self-'dɪsəplɪnd/	(adj)	tự rèn luyện
23. stressed	/'strest/	(adj)	căng thẳng, mệt mỏi
24. tense	/'tens/	(adj)	căng thẳng
25. worried	/'wɜ:ɪrɪd/	(adj)	lo lắng

THEME 4: LIFE IN THE PAST

New words

1. act out	/ækt aʊt/	(v)	đóng vai, diễn
2. arctic	/'ɑ:ktɪk/	(adj)	(thuộc về) Bắc cực
3. bare-footed	/beə(r)-fʊtɪd/	(adj)	chân đất
4. behave (+oneself)	/brɪ'heɪv/	(v)	ngoan, biết cư xử
5. dogsled	/'dɒgzled/	(n)	xe chó kéo
6. domed	/dəʊmd/	(adj)	hình vòm
7. downtown	/'daʊn'taʊn/	(adv)	vào trung tâm thành phố
8. eat out	/i:t aʊt/	(v)	ăn ngoài
9. entertain	/'entə'teɪn/	(v)	giải trí
10. event	/'ɪvent/	(n)	sự kiện
11. face to face	/feɪs tu feɪs/	(adv)	trực diện, mặt đối mặt
12. facility	/fə'sɪləti/	(n)	phương tiện, thiết bị
13. igloo	/'ɪɡlu:/	(n)	lều tuyết
14. illiterate	/'ɪlɪtərət/	(adj)	thất học
15. loudspeaker	/'laʊd'spi:kə(r)/	(n)	loa
16. occasion	/'ɒkeɪʒn/	(n)	dịp
17. pass on	/'pɑ:s ɒn/	(ph.v)	truyền lại, kể lại
18. post	/'pəʊst/	(v)	đăng tải
19. snack	/'snæk/	(n)	đồ ăn vặt

20. street vendor	/stri:t 'vendə(r)/	(n)	người bán hàng rong
21. strict	/strikt/	(adj)	ng nghiêm khắc
22. treat	/tri:t/	(v)	cư xử

THEME 5: WONDERS OF VIET NAM

New words

1. administrative	/əd'mɪnɪstrətɪv/	(adj)	thuộc về hoặc liên quan đến việc quản lý
2. astounding	/ə'staʊndɪŋ/	(adj)	làm sững sờ, làm sững sốt
3. cavern	/'kævən/	(n)	hang lớn, động
4. citadel	/'sɪtədəl/	(n)	thành lũy, thành trì
5. complex	/'kɒmpleks/	(n)	khu liên hợp, quần thể
6. contestant	/kən'testənt/	(n)	đấu thủ, thí sinh
7. fortress	/'fɔ:trəs/	(n)	pháo đài
8. geological	/,dʒi:ə'lɒdʒɪkl/	(adj)	(thuộc) địa chất
9. limestone	/'laɪmstəʊn/	(n)	đá vôi
10. measure	/'meʒə(r)/	(n)	biện pháp, phương sách
11. paradise	/'pærədəɪs/	(n)	thiên đường
12. picturesque	/,pɪktʃə'resk/	(adj)	đẹp, gây ấn tượng mạnh (phong cảnh)
13. recognition	/,rekəg'nɪʃn/	(n)	sự công nhận, sự thừa nhận
14. rickshaw	/'rɪkʃə:/	(n)	xe xích lô, xe kéo
15. round (in a game)	/raʊnd/	(n)	hiệp, vòng (trong trò chơi)
16. sculpture	/'skʌlptʃə(r)/	(n)	bức tượng (điều khắc)
17. setting	/'setɪŋ/	(n)	khung cảnh, môi trường
18. spectacular	/spek'tækjələ(r)/	(adj)	đẹp mắt, ngoạn mục, hùng vĩ
19. structure	/'strʌktʃə(r)/	(n)	công trình kiến trúc, công trình xây dựng
20. tomb	/tu:m/	(n)	ngôi mộ

THEME 6: VIET NAM: THEN AND NOW

New words

1. annoyed	/ə'nɔɪd/	(adj)	bực mình, khó chịu
2. astonished	/ə'stɒnɪʃt/	(adj)	kinh ngạc
3. boom	/bu:m/	(n)	bùng nổ
4. compartment	/kəm'pɑ:tmənt/	(n)	toa xe
5. clanging	/klæŋɪŋ/	(adj)	tiếng leng keng
6. cooperative	/kəʊ'ɒpərətɪv/	(adj)	hợp tác
7. elevated walkway	/'elɪvətɪd 'wɔ:kweɪ/	(n)	lối đi dành cho người đi bộ
8. exporter	/ek'spɔ:tə(r)/	(n)	nước xuất khẩu, người xuất khẩu
9. extended family	/'ɪk'stendɪd 'fæməli/	(n)	gia đình nhiều thế hệ cùng sống chung
10. flyover	/'flaɪəʊvə(r)/	(n)	cầu vượt (cho xe máy, ô tô)
11. manual	/'mænjʊəl/	(adj)	làm (gì đó) bằng tay
12. mushroom	/'mʌʃrʊm/	(v)	mọc lên như nấm
13. noticeable	/'nɒtɪsəbl/	(adj)	gây chú ý, đáng chú ý
14. nuclear family	/'nju:kliə(r) 'fæməli/	(n)	gia đình hạt nhân
15. photo exhibition	/'fəʊtəʊ ,eksɪ'bjʃn/	(n)	triển lãm ảnh

16. pedestrian	/pə'destriən/	(n)	người đi bộ
17. roof	/ru:f/	(n)	mái nhà
18. rubber	/'rʌbə(r)/	(n)	cao su
19. sandals	/'sændlɪz/	(n)	dép
20. thatched house	/θætʃt haus/	(n)	nhà tranh mái lá
21. tiled	/taɪld/	(adj)	lợp ngói, bằng ngói
22. tram	/træm/	(n)	xe điện, tàu điện
23. trench	/trentʃ/	(n)	hào giao thông
24. tunnel	/'tʌnl/	(n)	đường hầm, cống ngầm
25. underpass	/'ʌndəpɑ:s/	(n)	đường hầm cho người đi bộ qua đường

THEME 7: RECIPES AND EATING HABITS

New words

1. chop	/tʃɒp/	(v)	chặt
2. cube	/kju:b/	(n)	miếng hình lập phương
3. deep-fry	/di:p-fraɪ/	(v)	rán ngập mỡ
4. dip	/dɪp/	(v)	nhúng
5. drain	/dreɪn/	(v)	làm ráo nước
6. garnish	/'gɑ:rnɪʃ/	(v)	trang trí (món ăn)
7. grate	/greɪt/	(v)	nạo
8. grill	/grɪl/	(v)	nướng
9. marinate	/'mærɪneɪt/	(v)	ướp
10. peel	/'pi:l/	(v)	gọt vỏ, bóc vỏ
11. purée	/'pjʊəreɪ/	(v)	xay nhuyễn
12. roast	/rəʊst/	(v)	quay
13. shallot	/ʃə'lɒt/	(n)	hành khô
14. simmer	/'sɪmə(r)/	(v)	om
15. spread	/spred/	(v)	phết
16. sprinkle	/'sprɪŋkl/	(v)	rắc
17. slice	/slaɪs/	(v)	cắt lát
18. staple	/'steɪpl/	(n)	lượng thực chính
19. starter	/'stɑ:tə(r)/	(n)	món khai vị
20. steam	/sti:m/	(v)	hấp
21. stew	/stju:/	(v)	hầm
22. stir-fry	/stɜ:(r)-fraɪ/	(v)	xào
23. tender	/'tendə(r)/	(adj)	mềm
24. versatile	/'vɜ:sətəɪl/	(adj)	đa dụng
25. whisk	/wɪsk/	(v)	đánh (trứng...)

THEME 8: TOURISM

New words

1. affordable	/ə'fɔ:dəbl/	(adj)	có thể chi trả được, hợp túi tiền
2. air	/eə(r)/	(v)	phát sóng (đài, vô tuyến)
3. breathtaking	/'breθteɪkɪŋ/	(adj)	ấn tượng, hấp dẫn
4. check-in	/tʃek-ɪn/	(n)	việc làm thủ tục lên máy bay
5. checkout	/'tʃekəʊt/	(n)	thời điểm rời khỏi khách sạn
6. confusion	/kən'fju:ʒn/	(n)	sự hoang mang, bối rối

7. erode away	/ɪ'rəʊd ə'weɪ/	(v)	mòn đi
8. exotic	/ɪg'zɒtɪk/	(adj)	kì lạ
9. explore	/ɪk'splɔ:(r)/	(v)	thám hiểm
10. hyphen	/'haɪfn/	(n)	dấu gạch ngang
11. imperial	/ɪm'piəriəl/	(adj)	(thuộc về) hoàng đế
12. inaccessible	/,ɪnæk'sesəbl/	(adj)	không thể vào/tiếp cận được
13. lush	/lʌʃ/	(adj)	tươi tốt, xum xuê
14. magnificence	/mæg'nɪfɪsns/	(n)	sự nguy nga, lộng lẫy, tráng lệ
15. not break the bank	/nɒt breɪk ðə bæŋk/	(idiom)	không tốn nhiều tiền
16. orchid	/'ɔ:kɪd/	(n)	hoa lan
17. package tour	/'pækɪdʒ tuə(r)/	(n)	chuyến du lịch trọn gói
18. pile-up	/'paɪl-ʌp/	(n)	vụ tai nạn do nhiều xe đâm nhau
19. promote	/'prə'məʊt/	(v)	giúp phát triển, quảng bá
20. pyramid	/'pɪrəmid/	(n)	kim tự tháp
21. safari	/sə'fɑ:ri/	(n)	cuộc đi săn, cuộc hành trình (bằng đường bộ nhất là ở đông và nam phi)
22. stalagmite	/stə'lægmaɪt/	(n)	măng đá
23. stimulating	/'stɪmjuleɪtɪŋ/	(adj)	thú vị, đầy phần kích
24. touchdown	/'tʌtʃdaʊn/	(n)	sự hạ cánh
25. varied	/'veəriəd/	(adj)	đa dạng

THEME 9: ENGLISH IN THE WORLD

New words

1. accent	/'æksent/	(n)	ọng điệu
2. bilingual	/,baɪ'ɪŋgwəl/	(adj)	gười sử dụng được hai thứ tiếng
3. dialect	/'daɪələkt/	(n)	tiếng địa phương
4. dominance	/'dɒmɪnəns/	(n)	chiếm ưu thế
5. establishment	/'ɪstæblɪʃmənt/	(n)	việc thành lập, thiết lập
6. factor	/'fæktə(r)/	(n)	yếu tố
7. get by in (a language)	/get baɪ ɪn/	(v)	cố gắng sử dụng được một ngôn ngữ với với những gì mình có
8. global	/'gləʊbl/	(adj)	toàn cầu
9. flexibility	/,fleksə'bɪləti/	(n)	tính linh hoạt
10. fluent	/'flu:ənt/	(adj)	trôi chảy
11. imitate	/'ɪmɪteɪt/	(v)	bắt chước
12. immersion school	/'ɪmɜ:ʃn sku:l/		trường học nơi một ngôn ngữ khác tiếng mẹ đẻ được sử dụng hoàn toàn
13. massive	/'mæsɪv/	(adj)	to lớn
14. mother tongue	/'mʌðə tʌŋ/	(n)	tiếng mẹ đẻ
15. multinational	/'mʌ:ti'næʃnəl/	(adj)	đa quốc gia
16. official /ə'fɪʃl	/	(adj)	(thuộc về) hành chính; chính thức
17. openness	/'əʊpənəs/	(n)	độ mở
18. operate	/'ɒpəreɪt/	(v)	đóng vai trò
19. pick up (a language)	/'pɪk ʌp/	(v)	học một ngôn ngữ theo cách tự nhiên từ MT xung quanh

20. punctual	/ˈpʌŋktʃuəl/	(adj)	đúng giờ
21. rusty	/ˈrʌsti/	(adj)	giảm đi do lâu không thực hành/sử dụng
22. simplicity	/sɪmˈplɪsəti/	(n)	sự đơn giản
23. variety	/vəˈraɪəti/	(n)	thể loại

THEME 10: SPACE TRAVEL

New words

1. astronaut	/ˈæstrənɔ:t/	(n)	phi hành gia
2. astronomy	/əˈstrɒnəmi/	(n)	thiên văn học
3. attach	/əˈtætʃ/	(v)	buộc, gài
4. float	/fləʊt/	(v)	trôi (trong không gian)
5. habitable	/ˈhæbɪtəbl/	(adj)	có đủ điều kiện cho sự sống
6. International Space Station (ISS)	/ˌɪntəˈnæʃnəl speɪs ˈsteɪʃn/	(n)	Trạm vũ trụ quốc tế ISS
7. galaxy	/ˈgæləksi/	(n)	thiên hà
8. land	/lənd/	(v)	hạ cánh
9. launch	/ləʊntʃ/	(v, n)	phóng
10. meteorite	/ˈmi:tiəraɪt/	(n)	thiên thạch
11. microgravity	/ˈmaɪkrəʊ ˈgrævəti/	(n)	tình trạng không trọng lực
12. mission	/ˈmɪʃn/	(n)	chuyến đi, nhiệm vụ
13. operate	/ˈɒpəreɪt/	(v)	vận hành
14. orbit	/ˈɔ:bit/	(v, n)	xoay quanh, đi theo quỹ đạo
15. parabolic flight	/ˌpærəˈbɒlɪk flaɪt/	(n)	chuyến bay tạo môi trường không trọng lực
16. rocket	/ˈrɒkɪt/	(n)	tên lửa
17. rinseless	/rɪnsles/	(adj)	không cần xả nước
18. satellite	/ˈsætələɪt/	(n)	vệ tinh
19. space tourism	/speɪs ˈtuəɪzəm/	(n)	ngành du lịch vũ trụ
20. spacecraft	/ˈspeɪskra:ft/	(n)	tàu vũ trụ
21. spaceline	/ˈspeɪslɑ:n/	(n)	hãng hàng không vũ trụ
22. spacesuit	/ˈspeɪssu:t/	(n)	trang phục du hành vũ trụ
23. spacewalk	/ˈspeɪswɔ:k/	(n)	chuyến đi bộ trong không gian
24. telescope	/ˈtelɪskəʊp/	(n)	kính thiên văn
25. universe	/ˈju:nɪvɜ:s/	(n)	vũ trụ

THEME 11: CHANGING ROLES IN SOCIETY

New words

1. application	/ˌæplɪˈkeɪʃn/	(n)	việc áp dụng, ứng dụng
2. attendance	/əˈtendəns/	(n)	sự tham gia
3. breadwinner	/ˈbredwɪnə(r)/	(n)	trụ cột gia đình
4. burden	/ˈbɜ:dn/	(n)	gánh nặng
5. consequently	/ˈkɒnsɪkwəntli/	(adj)	vì vậy
6. content	/kənˈtent/	(adj)	hài lòng
7. externally	/ɪkˈstɜ:nəli/	(v)	bên ngoài
8. facilitate	/fəˈsɪlɪteɪt/	(v)	tạo điều kiện dễ dàng; điều phối
9. financial	/faɪˈnænsjəl/	(adj)	(thuộc về) tài chính
10. hands-on	/hændz-ɒn/	(adj)	thực hành, thực tế, ngay tại chỗ

11. individually-oriented	/,ɪndɪ'vɪdʒuəli-'ɔ:riəntɪd/	(adj)	có xu hướng cá nhân
12. leave	/li:v/	(n)	nghỉ phép
13. male-dominated	/meɪl-'dɒmɪneɪtɪd/	(adj)	do nam giới áp đảo
14. real-life	/rɪəl-laɪf/	(adj)	cuộc sống thực
15. responsive (to)	/rɪ'spɒnsɪv/	(adj)	phản ứng nhanh nhạy
16. role	/rəʊl/	(n)	vai trò
17. sector	/'sektə(r)/	(n)	mảng, lĩnh vực
18. sense (of)	/sens/	(n)	tính
19. sole	/səʊl/	(adj)	độc nhất
20. tailor	/'teɪlə(r)/	(v)	biến đổi theo nhu cầu
21. virtual	/'vɜ:tʃuəl/	(adj)	ảo
22. vision	/'vɪʒn/	(n)	tầm nhìn

THEME 12: MY FUTURE CAREER

New words

1. academic	/,ækə'demɪk/	(adj)	học thuật, thuộc nhà trường
2. alternatively	/ɔ:l'tɜ:nətɪvli/	(adv)	lựa chọn khác
3. applied	/ə'plaɪd/	(adj)	ứng dụng
4. approach	/ə'prəʊtʃ/	(n)	phương pháp, cách tiếp cận
5. behind the scenes	/bɪ'haɪnd ðə si:nz/	(idiom)	một cách thâm lặng
6. burn the midnight oil	/bɜ:n ðə 'mɪdnat ɔɪl/	(idiom)	học hoặc làm việc muộn
7. career	/kə'riə(r)/	(n)	sự nghiệp
8. career path	/kə'riə pa:θ/	(n)	con đường sự nghiệp
9. chef	/ʃef/	(n)	đầu bếp
10. certificate	/sə'tɪfɪkət/	(n)	chứng chỉ
11. cultivation	/'kʌltɪ'veɪʃn/	(n)	canh tác
12. customer service	/'kʌstəmə(r) 'sɜ:vɪs/	(n)	phòng (dịch vụ) chăm sóc khách hàng
13. CV	/,si: 'vi:/	(n)	sơ yếu lý lịch
14. flexitime	/'fleksɪtaɪm/	(adv)	(làm việc) theo giờ linh hoạt
15. fashion designer	/'fæʃn dɪ'zəɪnə(r)/	(n)	thiết kế thời trang
16. enrol	/ɪn'rəʊl/	(v)	đăng ký học
17. housekeeper	/'haʊski:pə(r)/	(n)	nghề dọn phòng (trong khách sạn)
18. lodging manager	/'lɒdʒɪŋ 'mænɪdʒə(r)/	(n)	người phân phòng
19. make a bundle	/meɪk ə 'bʌndl/	(idiom)	kiếm bộn tiền
20. Nine-to-five	/naɪn-tə-faɪv/	(adj)	giờ hành chính (9 giờ sáng đến 5 giờ chiều)
21. on-going	/ɒn-'gəʊɪŋ/	(adj)	liên tục
22. profession	/prə'feɪʃn/	(n)	nghề
23. take into account	/teɪk 'ɪntə ə'kaʊnt/	(v.phrase - idiom)	cân nhắc kỹ

24. sector	/'sektə(r)/	(n)	thành phần
------------	-------------	-----	------------

❁ PRACTICE (LUYỆN TẬP)

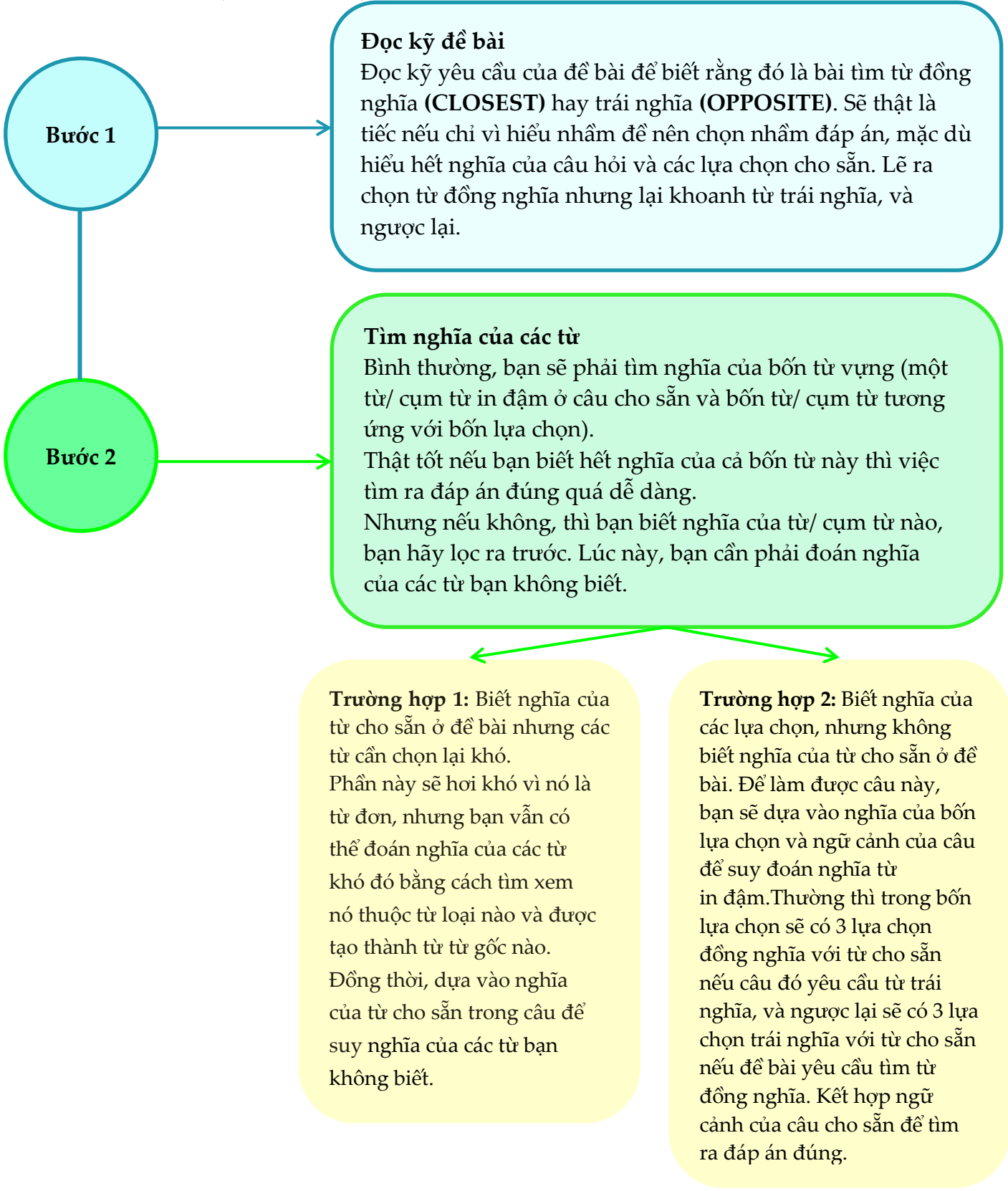
Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

- My mother told me to do the _____ yesterday but I forgot about it.
A. wash-up B. laundry C. childcare D. exercises
- My wife is going on her business next week so I have to _____ most of the chores around the house.
A. distribute B. hold C. take D. handle
- Mr. Hinh found it difficult to be in charge of the household _____.
A. financial B. financially C. finances D. financier
- _____ is a person who works at home and takes care of the house and family.
A. Breadwinner B. Homemaker C. Servant D. Houseman
- When his wife gave birth to a baby boy, Mr. Nam became the sole _____.
A. housemaid B. housekeeper C. father D. breadwinner
- My mother and I often go to the supermarket to shop for _____ at weekends.
A. cook B. groceries C. heavy lifting D. the chores
- After eating dinner, I have to do the _____ and then do my homework every day.
A. washing-up B. wash-up C. washing-ups D. washings-up
- To Hoa, her father is the greatest person in the world and he always sets a good _____ for her.
A. role B. behavior C. example D. action
- You've been a bit tense lately so you need to _____ a break.
A. get B. take C. has D. let
- We need to prepare food, do laundry and chores at home. It's _____.
A. social skill B. self-care skills C. housekeeping skill D. cognitive skills
- A meal of Hue people has a natural combination between flavors and colors of dishes, which creates the unique _____ in the regional cuisine.
A. description B. list C. feature D. part
- You usually _____ vegetables like onion. It means that you cut them into many small pieces.
A. grate B. sprinkle C. chop D. whisk
- Keeping a _____ for a few days will help you discover your bad eating habits.
A. food dairy B. report C. diary D. personal
- One special feature of cuisine in Southern Vietnam is short cooking time which aims to _____ the freshness of food.
A. remain B. exist C. stay D. continue
- You may have had certain eating habits for so long that you do not _____ that they are unhealthy.
A. understand B. tell C. recognize D. realize
- Such _____ as sugar, sugarcane, and coconut water are mostly used in Southern Vietnamese food than in Northern and Central Viet Nam.
A. ingredients B. menus C. dishes D. courses
- I didn't eat everything that they _____ me at the party.
A. served B. shared C. cooked D. baked
- My morning _____ is to get up at seven, have breakfast, then leave home at eight.
A. timetable B. habit C. routine D. action

19. Vinh can't go out with us to see a movie now because he's _____ meal.
 A. preparing B. making C. arranging D. keeping
20. I'm responsible for cooking dinner as my mother usually works _____ .
 A. lately B. early C. later D. late

V. CLOSEST & OPPOSITE MEANING

❁ KNOWLEDGE (KIẾN THỨC)



PRACTICE (LUYỆN TẬP)

Choose the word(s) CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.

- If you listen carefully to this piece of music, you can hear a flute in the background.
A. position B. experience C. training D. environment
- The Internet is available only in cities and towns, so we cannot easily get access to it in the countryside.
A. visiting B. existing C. safe D. helpful
- Wildlife on Earth is disappearing fast and will continue to do so unless urgent action is taken.
A. vanishing B. damaging C. polluting D. destroying
- Pierre often helped her, and they devoted all their time to working in their laboratory.
A. dedicated B. sent C. gave D. offered
- I recently posted an advertisement for a vacancy in Sales Department.
A. available room B. available seat C. available space D. available position
- I lived in the U.S. for ten years, so I've lost touch with British politics.
A. become unaware of B. forgotten about
C. become confused about D. stopped talking about
- The law made wearing seat belts in cars compulsory.
A. necessary B. optional C. obligatory D. redundant
- Some research has shown a strong association between pesticide and certain diseases.
A. Cooperation B. Connection C. Consequence D. Cause
- Reaching 35 and obviously aging, Jane has to make up her mind on her future very soon.
A. give a thought about B. prepare a plan for
C. make a decision on D. pay attention to
- The stock market crash marked the start of a severe depression.
A. recession B. unhappiness C. development D. boom

Choose the word(s) OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.

- Around one corner, a hundred goats suddenly appeared, in no apparent hurry to let us by.
A. paraded B. left C. vanished D. showed up
- Global warming is one of the major problems facing our planet.
A. Common B. minor C. important D. serious
- If we view the problem from a different angle, a solution may become more obvious.
A. practical B. straightforward C. noticeable D. unclear
- If you're willing to fly at night, you can get a much cheaper ticket.
A. unprepared B. ready C. happy D. reluctant
- People should have the courage to stand up for their beliefs.
A. weakness B. Cowardice C. power D. bravery
- I find it hard to work at home because there are too many distractions.
A. unawareness B. unconcern C. attention D. Carelessness
- He hoped the company would help him in finding stable accommodation.
A. poor B. permanent C. short - term D. suitable
- Before you read, work in pairs, ask and answer the questions.
A. While B. After C. When D. By the time
- She received a general education in local schools and some scientific training from her father.
A. offered B. had C. gave D. asked

10. And in 1891, the shy Marie, with very little money to live on, came to Paris to continue her studies at the Sorbonne.

A. many

B. a lot

C. few

D. much

4

READING

I. READING COMPREHENSION (ĐỌC HIỂU)

✿ KNOWLEDGE (KIẾN THỨC)

Thường có 5 câu hỏi và được phân loại thành những dạng chính sau.

Câu hỏi ý chính của bài đọc

Câu hỏi về thông tin chi tiết

+ Câu hỏi về thông tin Có trong bài đọc

+ Câu hỏi về thông tin không có trong bài đọc

Câu hỏi về từ vựng

+ Câu hỏi về đại từ ám chỉ

+ Câu hỏi về từ đồng nghĩa/trái nghĩa

1. Câu hỏi ý chính của đoạn văn (Main idea questions)

Đây thường là câu hỏi đầu tiên trong các bài tập đọc hiểu nhằm mục đích kiểm tra kỹ năng đọc lướt (skimming) và tìm ý chính trong đoạn văn nghệ chúng ta đừng quá đi sâu vào chi tiết hay từ mới mà chỉ cần chú ý đến ý chính của mỗi đoạn văn những từ khóa (key words) trong bài.

★ Cách nhận biết

What is the topic of the passage?

What is the subject of the

What is the main idea of the passage?

👉 Main idea questions

* What is the author's main point in the passage?

* With what is the author primarily concerned?

* Which of the following would be the best title?

★ Phương pháp làm bài

Bước 1: Đọc dòng đầu tiên của mỗi đoạn. Vì dòng đầu tiên thường thể hiện ý chính của toàn đoạn đó.

Bước 2: Tìm mối liên hệ giữa ý chính trong những dòng đầu tiên của mỗi đoạn.

Bước 3: Đọc lướt qua những dòng còn lại của bài đọc để kiểm tra liệu ý chính của những dòng đầu tiên có đúng với nội dung diễn giải không. Hãy chú ý đến những từ khóa được lặp đi lặp lại hoặc những từ đồng nghĩa.

Bước 4: Loại bỏ những phương án sai, đó là những phương án không có thông tin trong bài hoặc không thể hiện được ý chính của toàn bài đọc. Từ đó, lựa chọn đáp án đúng nhất.

★ **Ví dụ**

Mount Everest is the highest mountain in the world. It is also the highest trash pile in the world. About 400 people try to reach the top every year. Having many climbers means a lot of trash. It is very dangerous to climb Mt. Everest. The air is very thin and cold. Most people carry bottles of oxygen; they could die without it. When the oxygen bottles are empty, people throw them on the ground. When strong winds rip their tents, people leave them behind. They don't have the energy to take the trash away. They only have enough energy to go down the mountain safely. Trash is a terrible problem. Since people first began to climb Mt. Everest, they have left 50,000 kilos of trash on the mountain. Several groups have climbed the mountain just to pick up the trash. When people plan to climb the mountain, they have to plan to take away their trash.

Question. What is the main topic of the passage?

- A. Wind on the mountain
- B. A problem with trash
- C. A dangerous mountain
- D. Climbing safely

Câu hỏi về ý chính của đoạn văn là gì.

Đọc câu thứ hai của đoạn 1 chúng ta nắm được cụm từ khóa "the highest trash pile in the world"

☞ **Trùng với ý của lựa chọn B** (A problem with trash).

Đoạn 2: Câu đầu của đoạn này nói về việc leo lên đỉnh Everest rất nguy hiểm.

Đoạn 3: Nhấn mạnh về vấn đề rác thải quá kinh khủng ở ngọn núi này.

Đọc lướt các câu khác trong đoạn văn, chúng ta sẽ thấy nội dung nhắc nhiều đến từ trash và những vấn đề xoay quanh rác thải ở núi Everest.

→ Đáp án đúng là B.

2. Câu hỏi về thông tin chi tiết (stated detail questions)

Dạng câu hỏi này sẽ hỏi về một thông tin được nêu ra trong đoạn văn và thường được đưa ra theo thứ tự trong đoạn văn. Câu trả lời đúng có thể lặp lại một vài từ khóa (key words) có trong nội dung đoạn văn hoặc được diễn đạt ý qua những từ đồng nghĩa với câu trong đoạn văn.

★ **Cách nhận biết**

Ngoài những cách hỏi trực tiếp từ thông tin bài đọc (Có chứa từ khóa hoặc ý chính trong bài đọc), sẽ có thêm những câu hỏi thường gặp sau

According to the passage, ...

The passage indicates that...

Which of the following is true

The author mentions that...

It is stated in the passage, ...

☞ **Stated detail questions**

★ **Phương pháp làm bài**

Vì dạng bài này thường có liên quan đến những từ khóa ở trong câu hỏi và bài đọc, nên bạn sẽ làm như sau để tìm ra câu trả lời đúng.

Bước 1: Đọc câu hỏi và tìm từ khóa trong đó.

Bước 2: Đọc lướt phần thích hợp của đoạn văn để tìm từ khóa hoặc ý được đề cập trong câu hỏi.

Bước 3: Đọc kỹ các câu có chứa từ khóa hoặc nội dung hỏi đến.

Bước 4: Loại bỏ những phương án sai và chọn câu trả lời đúng nhất.

★ Ví dụ

Every year, people in many countries learn English. Some of them are young children. Others are teenagers. Many are adults. Some learn at school. Others study by themselves. A few learn English just by hearing the language in film, on television, in the office or among their friends. Most people must work hard to learn English.

Why do these all people learn English? It is not difficult to answer this question. Many boys and girls learn English at school because it is one of their subjects. Many adults learn English because it is useful for their work. Teenagers often learn English for their higher studies because some of their books are in English at the college or university. Other people learn English because they want to read newspapers or magazines in English.

Question: According to the passage, many adults learn English because _____.

A. it is difficult

B. they want to travel abroad

C. it is useful for their work

D. all are correct

Đọc câu hỏi chúng ta sẽ tập trung vào từ khóa **“adults learn English”** và tìm cụm từ này trong bài đọc.

Lướt qua đoạn văn, sẽ thấy xuất hiện hai **“adults”**. Một từ ở đoạn 1 và một từ ở đoạn 3, nhưng chỉ có đoạn 3 mới có cụm cả cụm từ **“adults learn English”**.

Đọc cả câu chứa cụm từ này, chúng ta sẽ tìm thấy ngay đáp án của câu hỏi.

→ Đáp án đúng là C.

3. Câu hỏi về thông tin không có trong đoạn văn (Unstated detail questions)

Dạng câu hỏi này sẽ yêu cầu tìm một thông tin không được nêu ra (not stated) hoặc không được đề cập (not mentioned) hoặc không đúng (not true) trong bài đọc. Trong bốn phương án cho sẵn của câu hỏi này, sẽ có ba phương án đúng hoặc được nêu ra trong bài đọc, do đó bạn cần phải đọc để tìm ra các phương án đó và lựa chọn được đáp án đúng với câu hỏi.

★ Cách nhận biết

Which of the following is not true?

Which of the following is not mentioned ...?

All of the following are true, EXCEPT ...?

Which of the following is not stated

👉 **Unstated detail questions**

★ Phương pháp làm bài

Bước 1: Tìm ra các từ khóa trong các lựa chọn của câu hỏi.

Bước 2: Đọc lướt phần thích hợp của đoạn văn để tìm từ khóa hoặc ý liên quan

Bước 3: Đọc kỹ các câu có chứa từ khóa hoặc ý liên quan đến câu hỏi.

Bước 4: Tìm ra câu trả lời chắc chắn đúng và được đề cập trong đoạn văn để loại bỏ những phương án đó.

Bước 5: Chọn câu trả lời không đúng hoặc không được đề cập trong bài đọc.

★ Ví dụ

Every nation and every country has its own customs and traditions. In Britain, traditions play a more important part in the life of the people than in the countries. Englishmen are proud of their traditions and carefully keep them up.

It has been the law for about 300 years that all theaters are closed on Sundays. No letters are delivered; only a few Sunday papers are published.

To this day, an English family prefers a house with a garden to a flat in a modern house with central heating. English people like gardens. Sometimes the garden in front of the house is a little square covered with cement painted garden in imitation of grass and a box of flowers.

Holidays are especially rich in old traditions and are different in Scotland, Ireland, Wales and England. Christmas is a great English national holiday, and in Scotland it is not kept, except by clerks in banks, all shops and factories are working.

Question: Which of the following is not true?

- A. In Great Britain, all theaters are closed on Sundays.
- B. In Great Britain, a postman doesn't work on Sundays.
- C. English families like a house with garden better than a modern flat.
- D. In Scotland Christmas is a great national holiday.

Đề tìm được đáp án đúng cho câu hỏi này, chúng ta sẽ dựa vào các từ khóa trong từng lựa chọn và tìm thông tin đó trong bài đọc.

- A. **Đúng** vì trong đoạn văn có câu "...all theaters are closed on Sundays".
- B. **Đúng** vì dựa vào câu "No letters are delivered" (Không lá thư nào được phát đi là các postman không làm việc vào ngày chủ nhật)
- C. **Đúng** vì dựa vào câu "an English family prefers a house with a garden to a flat in a modern house with central heating. English people like gardens."
- D. **Không đúng** vì trong đoạn văn có câu "Christmas is a great English national holiday, and in Scotland it is not kept".

→ Đáp án đúng là D.

4. Câu hỏi về từ vựng

🔍 Câu hỏi về đại từ ám chỉ

Dạng câu hỏi này sẽ yêu cầu xác định danh từ mà một đại từ (it/ they/ he/ she/...) ám chỉ đến. Câu trả lời cho câu hỏi này thường là một danh từ được nêu ra ở những câu trước. Để tìm ra câu trả lời đúng, bạn cần xác định đọc kỹ những câu trước để tìm danh từ liên quan đến đại từ được thay thế.

★ Cách nhận biết

The word "... " in line ... (paragraph ...) refers

The pronoun in line ... (paragraph ...) refers to...?

★ Phương pháp làm bài

Bước 1: Xác định đại từ ám chỉ trong câu hỏi.

Bước 2: Tìm đại từ đó xuất hiện trong đoạn văn (thường được in đậm).

Bước 3: Tìm danh từ được nêu ra trước đại từ (đọc câu chứa đại từ đó và những câu ở trước).

Bước 4: Chọn câu trả lời đúng nhất cho câu hỏi.

★ Ví dụ

In biology and ecology, the environment is all of the natural materials and living things on the Earth. This is also called the natural environment. Some people call themselves environmentalists. These people think that harmony with the environment is important. They think we must protect the environment. The important things in the environment that we value

are considered natural resources. For example fish, sunlight, and forests. These are renewable natural resources because they grow naturally when we use them. Non-renewable natural resources are important things in the environment that do not come back naturally. For example coal and natural gas.

What does the word "them" in line 8 refer to?

- A. materials
B. environmentalists
C. renewable natural resources
D. non-renewable natural resources

Trong câu hỏi đã chỉ cho chúng ta biết đại từ ám chỉ "them" nằm ở dòng thứ 8 của bài đọc. Đọc câu chứa từ "them" chúng ta sẽ thấy được ngay đáp án đó là cụm danh từ "renewable natural resources".

→ Đáp án đúng là C.

🔍 **Câu hỏi về từ đồng nghĩa/ trái nghĩa**

Dạng câu hỏi này sẽ yêu cầu bạn tìm từ đồng nghĩa hoặc trái nghĩa với một từ được đề cập trong bài đọc. Để trả lời đúng, bạn phải biết nghĩa hoặc đoán được nghĩa của từ trong bài và các từ cho sẵn.

★ **Cách nhận biết**

The word "... " is closest in meaning to ...?

The word "... " could be best replaced by ...?

The word "... " is opposite in meaning to ...?

★ **Phương pháp làm bài**

Bước 1: Tìm từ khóa trong đoạn văn mà câu hỏi đề cập đến.

Bước 2: Xác định từ loại của từ khóa đó.

Bước 3: Đọc câu chứa từ khóa một cách cẩn thận, và đoán nghĩa của từ khóa (nếu chưa biết).

Bước 4: Loại bỏ các phương án sai và chọn đáp án đúng nhất.

★ **Ví dụ**

Devastating floods along the coast have left many people homeless. People are asked to help by donating food, clothes, furniture, and other supplies to the Assistance Fund. Donations of bottled water are especially needed, since the floods have disrupted the local water supply. In addition, volunteers are needed to travel to the flooded area to help distribute the donations.

Question. The word "donating" is closest in meaning to ____.

- A. selling B. buying C. giving D. taking

Câu hỏi yêu cầu chúng ta đi tìm từ đồng nghĩa (closest in meaning) của từ "donating".

Trong đoạn văn, từ này nằm ở câu "People are asked to help by donating food, clothes, furniture, and other supplies to the Assistance Fund." Dù chưa biết nghĩa từ "donating", chúng ta có thể dựa vào thông tin trong câu trước, nhắc đến những người bị mất nhà (homeless) do bão lũ và dựa vào các từ khóa "help", "the Assistance Fund" (Quỹ Hỗ Trợ). Do vậy, chúng ta có thể đoán nghĩa của từ này là "quyên góp, ủng hộ".

So sánh với nghĩa của bốn từ cho sẵn, để tìm từ đồng nghĩa.

- A. selling: bán B. buying: mua
C. giving: cho, tặng, ủng hộ D. taking: lấy

→ Đáp án đúng là C.

❁ PRACTICE (LUYỆN TẬP)

Read the following texts, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D to each question.

[1] One of the most important discoveries of the nineteenth century was a method of using natural gas for cooking and heating. Large amounts of natural gas are found in the United States, usually several feet below the surface of the Earth. Natural gas is most often found in places where petroleum, the oil from which gasoline is made, is found. Often the natural gas must be removed before the oil itself can be reached.

For many years after natural gas was first **discovered**, it was thought to have no value. Finally, however, people began to understand its use and to find ways of storing it and moving it from place to place. Today natural gas is stored in large tanks and used for lighting, cooking and heating. It has also been used for electric generators and hybrid cars recently. In many ways natural gas is one of our finest fuels. It can be used for cooking without making the room hot. It is cheap and can be moved easily from one place to another through long pipelines, some of which are hundreds of miles in length.

1. This passage as a whole is about _____.
A. discovering natural gas
B. finding petroleum
C. using natural gas and petroleum
D. natural gas and its use
2. Which of the following is NOT true about natural gas?
A. It is not used for heating.
B. It moves through pipes.
C. It is cheap.
D. It can be stored.
3. How many uses of natural gas are mentioned?
A. two
B. three
C. four
D. five
4. What does the word "it" in the passage refer to?
A. natural gas
B. electric generator
C. pipeline
D. tank
5. Which of the following is closest meaning to "**discovered**"?
A. invented
B. found
C. used
D. stored

[2] Why should you learn a foreign language, such as English? First, learning a foreign language opens up job opportunities. Most companies look for people with foreign language skills. Second, learning a foreign language can offer a special experience to travellers. You can easily find the places, ask for directions, and even order food in the countries. Speaking a language also gives you a better understanding of the country's culture. Another reason why you should learn a foreign language is that **it** helps you to learn other subjects better. Learning a foreign language is **hard** and requires a lots of mental exercise. This, in turns, helps the brain to work better and strengthen the ability to memorize and analyze.

1. What is the topic of the passage?
A. The reasons for learning a foreign language
B. The benefits of learning English.
C. The ways to learn a foreign language
D. The importance of communication with people.
2. The word "**it**" refers to _____.
A. Another reason
B. learning a foreign language
C. subject.
D. mental exercise
3. According to the text, which of the following statement is NOT true?
A. Most companies look for people with foreign language skills.
B. Learning a foreign language helps you to learn other subjects better.
C. Speaking a language gives you a better understanding of the country's culture

D. It isn't necessary to know a foreign language

4. How many benefits of learning a foreign language are listed in the text ?

A. One B. Two C. Three D. Four

5. The word "**hard**" is closest in meaning to _____.

A. easy B. difficult C. interesting D. boring

[3] Tropical cyclones are called typhoons in Asia and hurricanes in North and South America. These forms go around like a wheel turning to the left when they hit in the northern part of the world. They have wind speeds of 60 kph or more. In the United States, the Tropical Prediction Center in Miami, Florida keeps an eye out for hurricanes.

When meteorologists **discover** a hurricane, they give it a name. They can use either a male or female name. Why should tropical cyclones have names? The name makes it easy for people to keep up with information about a hurricane and its possible dangers.

The World Meteorological Organization (WMO), an international weather group decides what names will be used. The WMO makes lists of names using the English alphabet. Each name on the list starts with a different letter. The first hurricane of the year gets the first name on that year's list. The second hurricane gets the next name. For examples, if the first hurricane is named Abel, the second might be named Betty. The name lists do not include names beginning with the letters Q, U, X, Y and Z. There aren't many names that begin with these letters.

Asian countries use a different list, **which** is made up by the WMO's Typhoon Committee. This list has a few personal names, but most of the names are of flowers, animals, trees, and other similar things.

1. What is the main idea of this reading?

A. When tropical cyclones are named B. When tropical cyclones can do
C. How tropical cyclones are named D. Who watches for tropical cyclones

2. What does the word "**which**" in the last paragraph refer to?

A. a different list B. a female name
C. the alphabet D. a male name

3. What is the wind speed of a cyclones?

A. 50 kph B. 60kph C. 70 pkh D. 80 pkh

4. Which of the following letters are NOT used to name hurricanes?

A. D B. T C. M D. Q

5. What does the word "**discover**" in paragraph 2 mean?

A. look for B. find out C. look at D. take off

[4] The price of holidays can fluctuate a great deal throughout the year, so you can save a lot if you are flexible with your travel dates and avoid peak holiday times. It can be also cheaper if you book well in advance. Before your departure, make sure you get as much information about your destination as you can. Find out if you require any special visas or permits to travel there. Think about spending money as well. Will you be able to access your own money easily enough or will you need to take cash with you? Think about eating larger lunches and smaller evening meals to help your money go further, as lunch is generally cheaper. Make sure that you keep sufficient identification with you at all times. It may also help to email a copy of your passport details to yourself, in case it is lost or stolen. Label your suitcases clearly so that they can be easily identified as yours. It can be useful to store a copy of your itinerary in a prominent place in your suitcase so that the airline will know where to find you if your luggage gets lost. Be sure to pack any

medication or other essential items in your hand luggage. If your flight is delayed, or your luggage is lost, these can be difficult to obtain in an airport or foreign country.

1. Which can be the best title for the passage?
A. Travel procedures
B. Travel advice
C. How to adjust travel dates
D. Protect your luggage
2. Which one of these is **NOT** advisable according to the passage?
A. Research your destination
B. Always bring identification
C. Apply for visas if necessary
D. Save money by cutting out dinner
3. According to the passage, your luggage should be _____.
A. stored in a safe place
B. tagged in case of being lost
C. packed with your passport
D. painted a bright colour
4. The underlined word 'it' refers to your _____.
A. identification
B. luggage
C. passport
D. flight
5. It can be inferred from the passage that _____.
A. travelling may cost more in peak season
B. you must always take cash with you
C. larger lunches cost more than smaller ones
D. you can't get back your lost luggage overseas

[5] Are you looking for a cheap, clean, effective source of power that doesn't cause pollution or waste natural resources? Look no further than solar energy from our sun. At present, most of our electricity comes from the use of coal and gas, oil or nuclear power. This power could be provided by the sun. One percent of the solar energy that reaches the earth is enough to provide power for the total population. Many countries have already used solar energy. Solar panels are **placed** on the roofs of our house and the Sun's energy is used to heat water. The energy can be stored for a number of days, so on cloudy days you can use solar energy, too. Sweden has an advanced solar energy program. **There**, all buildings will be heated by solar energy and cars will use solar energy instead of gas by the year 2015.

1. What is the main idea of the passage?
A. Energy
B. Solar energy
C. Pollution
D. Nuclear power
2. How much solar energy is enough for the world's population?
A. Two percent of the solar energy.
B. One – third of the solar energy.
C. One percent of the solar energy.
D. One – fifth of the solar energy.
3. Where are solar panels installed?
A. They are placed in the garden of the house.
B. They are placed on the roofs of the house.
C. They are placed on the floor of the house.
D. They are placed on the branches of the tall trees behind the house.
4. What is the word "placed" closest in meaning to?
A. put on
B. installed
C. put
D. B & C
5. What does the word "There" refers to?
A. Many countries
B. Sweden
C. On the roofs
D. The sun

[6] In the Mekong Delta, Long Dinh village of Tien Giang province is famous for its traditional craft of weaving flowered mats. The mat's high quality makes them popular domestically, and they are also exported to markets worldwide including Korea, Japan and America.

In spite of its well-established reputation for this traditional craft, mat weaving only started here some 50 years ago. It was first introduced by immigrants from Kim Son, a famous mat weaving village in the northern province of Ninh Binh. However, the technique of weaving sedge mats in Long Dinh, as compared with other places in the South, is somewhat different. Long Dinh branded mats are thicker and have more attractive colours and patterns.

Weaving sedge mats is similar to growing rice. Long Dinh mat production mainly occurs during the dry season, from January to April. Weavers have to work their hardest in May and June, otherwise, when the rainy season starts in July, they will have to put off finishing their products till the next dry season. No matter how much work it requires, Long Dinh mat producers stick with this occupation, as it brings a higher income than growing rice.

This trade provides employment for thousands of local labourers. At present, nearly 1,000 households in Long Dinh village live on weaving mats. To better meet market demands, Long Dinh mat weavers have created more products in addition to the traditional sedge mats. Particularly, they are producing a new type of mat made from the dried stalks of water hyacinth, a common material in the Mekong Delta.

Thanks to the planning and further investment, the mat weaving occupation has indeed brought in more income for local residents. Their living standards have improved considerably, resulting in better conditions for the whole village.

1. In order to meet market demands, artisans in Long Dinh _____.
A. try to produce various types of products B. stop producing the traditional sedge mats
C. produce new Products from rare material D. for thousands of local labourers
2. We can infer from the sentence “**Weaving sedge mats is similar to growing rice**” that _____.
A. both bring similar income B. both occur at the same time
C. both depend on weather conditions D. both occur on the same land
3. Despite difficulties, people in Long Dinh try to follow the craft because _____.
A. they can make the techniques of weaving different
B. they can earn more money than growing rice
C. they can have jobs in the rainy months
D. they can go to Korea, Japan and America
4. We can infer from the passage that _____.
A. the craft contributes much to the village economy
B. most of the households in Long Dinh village live on weaving mats
C. the new technique makes labourers work in the dry season
D. Long Dinh mat production is only well-known in foreign markets
5. All of the following are true about the craft in Long Dinh EXCEPT that _____.
A. the techniques are a little bit different from those in other regions
B. the mats have more attractive colours and designs
C. it has the origin from Kim Son, Ninh Binh
D. it has had the reputation for more than 50 years

[7] Life in the big city is face-paced, fun and exciting. There are countless job opportunities and activities to occupy your time. However, with the good, there also comes the bad. Although the big city has more job opportunities; there are also more people competing for a single job. This can make your job search frustrating. Oddly enough, you will see hundreds, if not thousands of jobs available each week, but you still might remain unemployed, especially when the economy is down. In addition, the cost of living is typically higher in big cities, and it can **cost you an arm and**

a leg for a small apartment in a decent area of the city, not to mention other costs to fulfill your basic demands. Diversity is a good thing, but the amount of people can be a bit overwhelming if you are not accustomed to it. There will always be crowds and always be people around. Moreover, traffic can be a nightmare in the big city. It can get so bad that it can turn you into an evil person. If you hate driving in traffic, then the big city life is not for you. Heavy traffic also contributes to the pollution, which is one of the biggest disadvantages of living in the city. Obviously, our health is affected most with certain diseases relating to respiratory system and other body parts. A lot of premature deaths are supposed to be the result of long-term exposure to small particles. Most importantly, there is always more crime in a big city, causing you second case your decision for living in a big city. You are much more likely to be a victim of a crime living in a big city than in a small town.

1. According to the passage, some good things of living in the city are _____.
 - A. excellent educational system and recreational activities
 - B. excellent educational system and countless job opportunities
 - C. countless job opportunities and activities to occupy your time
 - D. a lot of kinds of entertainment and shopping centers
2. While big cities have more job opportunities, it also give _____.
 - A. more competition for a single job
 - B. higher salary
 - C. growing economic crisis
 - D. greater chances of being unemployed
3. What does the phrase "**cost an arm and a leg**" mean?
 - A. your legs and arms have good value
 - B. cost a small amount of money
 - C. you must work hard to earn money
 - D. cost a lot of money
4. According to the paragraph, city is not a perfect place for _____.
 - A. extroverted people
 - B. introverted people
 - C. people who hate driving in traffic
 - D. people who prefer a busy life
5. Which of the following sentences is NOT true?
 - A. Pollution causes health problems.
 - B. Cities are always crowded.
 - C. It costs a lot of money to live in a big city.
 - D. Crime is not a serious problem in big cities.

[8] Orbis is an organisation which helps blind people of everywhere. It has built an eye hospital inside an aeroplane and flown in all over the world with an international medical team. Samantha Graham, a fourteen- year- old schoolgirl from England, went with the plane to Mongolia. Samantha tells the story of the Eukhtuul, a young Mongolian girl.

"Last year, when Eukhtuul was walking home school, she was attacked by boys with sticks and her eyes were badly damaged. Dr. Duffey, an Orbis doctor, said that without an operation **she** would never see again. I thought about all the things I do I that she couldn't, things like reading schoolbooks, watching television, seeing friends,! and I realised how lucky I am."

"The Orbis team agreed to operate on Eukhtuul and I was allowed to watch, together with some Mongolian medical student, I prayed the operation would be successful. The next day I waited nervously with Eukhtuul while Dr. Duffey removed her bandagers. "In six months your sight will be back to normal," he said. Eukhtuul smiled, her mother cried, and I had to wipe away some tears, too!"

"Now Eukhtuul wants to study hard to become a doctor. Her whole future has changed, thanks to a simple operation. We should all think more about how much our sight means to us."

1. What information can be learned from this passage?
 - A. the best way of studying medicine
 - B. the international work of some eye doctors

D. The island is roughly triangular in shape.

[10] In the early 17th century, most of the southern region of Vietnam was nearly uninhabited and in the position of Ho Chi Minh City, there was a small village formed with a few residents. However, thanks to its advantage in location, the town grew both economically and politically. By the 19th century, this had become a cultural hub of the South as well as an important trading center of the country.

You might not know that there was a time Saigon was referred to as the Pearl of the Far East. Sadly, having been through various occurrences and two disastrous wars has stunted the city's development. Only after the political instabilities had settled, Saigon recovered miraculously and maintained its leading position in terms of both the economics and culture. Officially named as Ho Chi Minh City, Saigon today has 22 districts in total and attracts hundreds of thousands of tourists annually.

1. What is the best title of the passage?
A. Saigon: Lost and Found
B. Saigon: Now and Then
C. Saigon: Then and Now
D. Saigon: Hub of the South East Vietnam
2. What happened with Saigon in the 19th century?
A. It became popular all over Asia.
B. It became a cultural hub of the South and an important trading center of Vietnam.
C. It became the most important trading center in the world.
D. It was no longer visited by international tourists.
3. The city's development has been stunted because of _____.
A. two disastrous wars
B. some major historic events
C. natural disasters and disastrous wars
D. different occurrences and disastrous wars
4. The word "occurrences" is closest in meaning to _____.
A. situations B. adventures C. incidents D. affairs
5. Which of the following sentences is NOT true?
A. In the early 17th century, there were only a few residents living on the position of Saigon.
B. The location of Saigon helped the town develop its economy and politics.
C. Saigon was once referred as the Pearl of the Far East.
D. Saigon had recovered and held its leading position before the political instabilities settled.

II. GAP-FILLING (ĐỌC ĐIỀN TỪ)

✿ KNOWLEDGE (KIẾN THỨC)

Dạng bài điền từ vào đoạn văn là dạng bài cung cấp những đoạn văn có chứa các chỗ trống và các lựa chọn cho sẵn để bạn lựa chọn đáp án đúng nhất điền vào đó. Những đáp án cần điền có thể liên quan đến ngữ pháp, từ vựng, liên từ, giới từ và cụm động từ.

🔮 Nguyên tắc chung khi làm bài

1. Bản chất của bài này, chính là chọn từ cho sẵn điền vào chỗ trống, do vậy bạn cần
 - Nhận biết các lựa chọn cho sẵn thuộc loại kiến thức nào (từ loại, các thì, mạo từ,...)
 - Nhớ lại kiến thức liên quan đến các lựa chọn đó.

- Xác định từ cần điền cho chỗ trống trong bài, dựa vào ngữ pháp, hàm ý và văn phong của đoạn văn để suy luận ra từ cần điền.

- Tìm đáp án đúng cho chỗ trống.

2. Cần ôn tập các kiến thức sau

So sánh	Từ loại	V-ing/to V/V	Cụm từ
Liên từ	Mạo từ	Bị động	Lượng từ
Thì động từ	Giới từ	Điều kiện	Đại từ QH

☞ Ôn tập kỹ các nội dung ngữ pháp bên trên để áp dụng giải quyết lựa chọn đáp án chính xác cho chỗ trống cần điền

❁ PRACTICE (LUYỆN TẬP)

Read the following texts and mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct word or phrase that best fits each of the numbered blanks.

<1> The coronavirus is a kind of virus. Viruses are tiny germs that are so small that you can't see them. They are so (1) _____ that they can float through the air in tiny drops of water, and they can sit on your skin without you feeling them. If some of these germs get inside you, they can use your body to make more germs, and that can make you ill.

There are lots of different sorts (2) _____ coronaviruses and some of them infect people. If you have been infected with one of these coronaviruses, all you probably (3) _____ was a snotty nose or a cough.

But when this completely new coronavirus germ gets inside a human body, it causes (4) _____ illness called COVID-19. When people talk about "catching the coronavirus", they are talking about this illness. Because this coronavirus is new, scientists don't know everything about it yet. But they think that there are two main (5) _____ that people can catch it.

1. A. big B. small C. light D. heavy
2. A. about B. for C. with D. of
3. A. had B. made C. took D. caught
4. A. a B. an C. the D. Ø
5. A. roads B. ways C. behaviours D. habits

<2> The relationship between students and teachers is less formal in the USA than in many other countries. American students do not stand up (1) _____ their teachers enter the room. Students are encouraged to ask questions during class, to stop in the teacher's office for extra help, and to phone if they are absent. Most teachers (2) _____ students to enter class late or leave early if necessary. (3) _____ the lack of formality, students are still expected to be polite to their teachers and fellow class mate.

When students want to ask questions, they usually (4) _____ a hand and wait to be called on. When a test is being given, talking to a classmate is not only rude but also risky. Most American teachers considers that students who are talking to each other (5) _____ a test are cheating.

1. A. when B. where C. that D. whether
2. A. let B. allow C. make D. encourage

- | | | | |
|--------------|-------------|------------|---------------|
| 3. A. Though | B. In spite | C. Despite | D. Because of |
| 4. A. rise | B. arise | C. raise | D. put |
| 5. A. in | B. when | C. while | D. during |

<3> There are many embroidery villages in Viet Nam, but Quat Dong village in Ha Noi is widely known for its products of high quality.

Embroidery has been developing around here (1)_____the 17th century. In the past, local skilled artisans were chosen to make sophisticated embroidered costumes for the Vietnamese King, Queen and other Royal family members. The first man (2)_____taught the local people how to embroider was Dr. Le Cong Hanh, who lived during the Le dynasty. He learned how to embroider while on a trip to China as an envoy, and taught the villagers of Quat Dong upon his return. Although these skills eventually spread across (3)_____country, the Quat Dong's artisans' creations are still the most appreciated. In order to create (4)_____embroideries, an artisan must be patient, careful and have an eye for design, along with clever hands. Nowadays, Quat Dong products may range from clothes, bags, pillowcases, to paintings and decorations, which are (5)_____to many countries.

- | | | | |
|--------------|-------------|--------------|-------------------|
| 1. A. around | B. over | C. on | D. since |
| 2. A. whom | B. who | C. when | D. what |
| 3. A. the | B. a | C. an | D. X (no article) |
| 4. A. beauty | B. beautify | C. beautiful | D. beautifully |
| 5. A. wonder | B. cause | C. true | D. exported |

<4> Living in Vietnam today differs greatly from the lifestyle of 100 years ago. People in the past mainly worked in agriculture (1)_____today there are significantly less people working in this sector of the economy. These days, by comparison, people are more likely to be employed in manufacturing and tourism than in the rice fields. Moreover, Vietnam, which was (2) _____agrarian, is transforming into an entirely different country. While agriculture is still an important component of the Vietnamese economy, other enterprises are accounting for an increasing amount of economic activity.

However, along with the differences, similarities also exist. The people of Vietnam have retained many of the characteristics of (3)_____forefathers. The Vietnamese people are as friendly today as they were in the past. This is best exemplified in the way they welcome foreigners (4)_____their unique country. Moreover, the resilience and determination of the people of Vietnam has not changed. The Vietnamese work collectively and happily towards the (5) _____of their country.

- | | | | |
|---------------------|--------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. A. however | B. therefore | C. whereas | D. when |
| 2. A. traditionally | B. gradually | C. occasionally | D. presently |
| 3. A. they | B. their | C. them | D. theirs |
| 4. A. on | B. at | C. to | D. for |
| 5. A. developed | B. developer | C. developing | D. development |

<5> Like other big cities in Asia, Ha Noi began to operate the tram system in the early 1900s. A few years later, due to its cheap fares and convenience, this system rapidly became one of the most popular (1)_____of transport. There were five tram routes with Hoan Kiem Lake as a central station for residents to get (2)_____the city and to the suburban areas. However, (3)_____the population boom and the urgent demand for upgrading the more modern road system, the rail tracks were gradually removed and completely disappeared in 1990.

These days, the fact that the population of the capital has risen tremendously results in a dramatic increase in the number of vehicles on the roads. To meet the (4)_____ travel demands and reduce traffic congestion, the first 13-kilometre skytrain system, connecting Cat Linh and Ha Dong is launched and it is expected to be completed by 2018. Each four-compartment skytrain with the length of approximately 80 metres and the height of about 3.8 metres has a capacity of 1,362 passengers. Additionally, a new rail system including over eight kilometres of skytrain rail and four kilometres of subway rail, (5)_____links Ha Noi Central Station to Nhon, also has being built recently. The capacity of each skytrain in this efficient high-speed rail system is roughly 1,200 passengers.

1. A. ways B. systems C. spaces D. means
2. A. around B. over C. by D. ahead
3. A. because B. because of C. as D. since
4. A. increase B. increased C. increasing D. increasingly
5. A. which B. what C. whose D. where

<6> Rice is (1)_____by Vietnamese people every day. It often grows in tropical countries such as Vietnam, Thailand or Malaysia. (2)_____ Chinese have also been growing rice for thousands of years. The seeds are planted in special beds to grow into young rice plants. Then they are taken to fields covered (3)_____muddy water called paddies. The fields of rice look very (4)_____. After 3 or 5 months, the rice is ready to be picked. People often drain away water before collecting rice. Eating rice is a special action in the world. They don't use spoons or forks to enjoy bowls of rice. (5)_____, they use two short sticks known as chopsticks to put rice into their mouths. China and Vietnam are the two countries in which people use chopsticks very well.

1. A. used B. taken C. eaten D. boiled
2. A. A B. Some C. The D. Any
3. A. in B. by C. with D. of
4. A. beauty B. beautiful C. beautifully D. beautify
5. A. However B. Moreover C. Besides D. Instead

<7> When you visit London, one of the first things you will see is Big Ben, the famous clock which can be heard all over the world on the BBC. If the Houses of Parliament hadn't burned (1)_____in 1834, the great clock would never have been erected. Big Ben takes its (2)_____from Sir Benjamin Hall who was responsible for the making of the clock when the new Houses of Parliament were being built. It is not only of immense size, but is extremely accurate as well. Officials from Greenwich Observatory have the clock checked (3)_____ a day. On the BBC, you can hear the clock when it is actually striking because microphones (4)_____to the clock tower. Big Ben has rarely gone wrong. Once, however, it failed to give the correct time. A painter (5) _____had been working on the tower hung a pot of paint on one of the hands and slowed it down.

1. A. up B. on C. down D. off
2. A. place B. name C. fame D. time
3. A. two B. two time C. couple D. twice
4. A. connects B. are connected C. is connected D. connect
5. A. who B. whom C. which D. where

<8> Garbage is what someone leaves behind that they do not want to use anymore. It can also be called waste or rubbish. (1)_____definition of garbage is anything left behind at a place where

you used to be, but are not anymore. In modern home and businesses, (2)_____, garbage is normally separated and put where it can be collected and taken to a place designed to hold, burn, or recycle garbage.

Smoke is a cloud of very small, solid parts. It is made when (3)_____ something. Smoke is can be bad because if it goes into the lungs of a person, it can kill them. (4)_____ people think that they are always (5)_____to see smoke, but it can also be invisible (a thing that a person is not able to see).

- | | | | |
|--------------|-------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. A. A | B. An | C. The | D. No article |
| 2. A. but | B. however | C. therefore | D. moreover |
| 3. A. burn | B. to burn | C. burning | D. burned |
| 4. A. Almost | B. The most | C. Most of | D. Most |
| 5. A. could | B. possible | C. capable | D. able |

<9>

A POWERFUL INFLUENCE

There can be no doubt at all that the Internet has made a huge difference to our lives. Parents are worried that children spend too (1)_____ time playing on the Internet, hardly ever doing anything else in their spare time. Naturally, parents are curious to find out why the Internet is so attractive, and they want to know if it can be (2) _____ for their children. Should parents worry is their children are spending that much time staring at their computers?

Obviously, if children are bent over their computers for hours, absorbed in some games, (3) _____ doing their homework, then soothing is wrong. Parents and children could decide how much use the children should (4) _____ of the Internet, and the children should give their word that it won't interfere with homework. If the children are not holding to this arrangement, the parents can take more drastic steps. Dealing with a child's use of the Internet is not much different from negotiating any other sort of bargain about behaviour.

Any parent who is seriously alarmed about a child's behaviour should make an appointment to discuss the matter with a teacher. Spending time in front of (5) _____ screen does not necessarily affect a child's performance at school. Even if a child is absolutely crazy about using the Internet, he or she is probably just going through a phase, and in a few months there will be something else to worry about.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|---------------|------------------|
| 1. A. many | B. few | C. much | D. a little |
| 2. A. harm | B. harmless | C. harmlessly | D. harmful |
| 3. A. in spite of | B. instead of | C. because of | D. on account of |
| 4. A. cause | B. take | C. make | D. create |
| 5. A. a | B. an | C. the | D. no article |

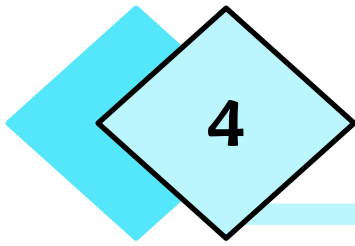
<10> Singapore is an island city of about three million people. It's a beautiful city with (1)_____ of parks and open spaces. It's also a very clean city.

Most of the people live in high-rise flats in different parts of (2)_____ island. The business district is very modern with lots of high new office buildings. Singapore also has some nice older sections. In Chinatown, there are rows of old shop houses. The government (3)_____ in Singapore are very beautiful and date from the colonial days.

Singapore is (4)_____ for its shops and restaurants. There are many good shopping centers. Most of the goods are duty free. Singapore's restaurants sell Chinese, Indian, Malay and European food, (5)_____ the prices are quite reasonable.

- | | | | |
|------------|---------|--------|---------|
| 1. A. much | B. many | C. lot | D. lots |
|------------|---------|--------|---------|

- | | | | |
|-----------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|
| 2. A. a | B. an | C. the | D. no article |
| 3. A. build | B. builders | C. building | D. buildings |
| 4. A. beautiful | B. famous | C. full | D. crowded |
| 5. A. and | B. but | C. although | D. if |



WRITING

I. SENTENCE WRITING (VIẾT CÂU)

❖ KNOWLEDGE (KIẾN THỨC)

Ôn tập các chuyên đề: Cụm & câu/Bị động/Tường thuật/Khiếm khuyết/Điều kiện/Mệnh đề quan hệ / So Sánh

BẢNG GIỚI THIỆU MỘT SỐ CẤU TRÚC VIẾT LẠI CÂU KHÁC

S + V + too + adj/adv + (for sb) + to do st: (quá...để cho ai làm gì...)

Ex: This structure is too easy for you to remember.

Ex: He ran too fast for me to follow.

S + V + too + adj/adv + (for sb) + to do st: (quá...để cho ai làm gì...)

Ex: This structure is too easy for you to remember.

Ex: He ran too fast for me to follow.

S + V + adj/ adv + enough + (for sb) + to do st : (đủ... cho ai đó làm gì...)

Ex: She is old enough to get married.

Ex: They are intelligent enough for me to teach them English.

S + V + so + adj/ adv + that + S + V: (quá... đến nỗi mà...)

Ex: This box is so heavy that I cannot take it.

Ex: He speaks so soft that we can't hear anything.

It + V + such + (a/an) + N(s) + that + S + V: (quá... đến nỗi mà...)

Ex: It is such a heavy box that I cannot take it.

Ex: It is such interesting books that I cannot ignore them at all.

have/ get + st + Ved/V3: (nhờ ai hoặc thuê ai làm gì...)

Ex: I'd like to have my shoes repaired.

It + takes/ took+ someone + time + to do st: (làm gì... mất bao nhiêu thời gian...)

= S + spend/ spent + time+ V-ing

Ex: It takes me 5 minutes to get to school.

= I spent 5 minutes getting to school.

S + find+ it+ adj + to do st: (thấy ... để làm gì...)

Ex: I find it very difficult to learn about English.

Ex: They found it easy to overcome that problem.

to prefer + N to N: thích cái gì hơn cái gì

Ex: I prefer this dress to that one you wore yesterday.

to prefer + Ving to Ving: thích làm gì hơn làm gì

Ex: He prefers flying to travelling by train.
would prefer to V + rather than + V: muốn làm gì hơn làm gì = would rather + V + than + V Ex: I would prefer to stay at home rather than go to the cinema. = I would rather stay at home than go to the cinema.
to be/get used to + V-ing: (quen làm gì) = to be accustomed to + V-ing Ex: I am used to eating with chopsticks. used to + V (infinitive): (thường làm gì trong QK và bây giờ không làm nữa) Ex: I used to go fishing with my friend when I was young.
by chance = by accident (adv): (tình cờ) Ex: I met her in Paris by chance last week.
to be keen on/ to be fond of/ + N/V-ing : (thích làm gì đó...) to be interested in Ex: My younger sister is fond of/ keen on/ interested in playing with her dolls.
to waste + time/ money + V-ing: (tổn tiền hoặc thời gian làm gì) Ex: He always wastes time playing computer games each day.
had better + V(infinitive): (nên làm gì...) Ex: You had better go to see the doctor.
look forward to V-ing: (mong chờ, mong đợi làm gì) Ex: We are looking forward to going on holiday
Let's/ Shall I/ Shall we + V (đề nghị, rủ) = Why don't you/ Why don't we + V = What about/ How about + Ving Ex: Why don't you go swimming? = Let's go swimming = What about going swimming?
S + V + so that + S + V (để mà) = S + V + so as to/ in order to/to + V Ex: I study hard so that I can get high marks in this semester. = I study hard in order to get high marks in this semester.
Bothand+ Vinf (vừavừa, cảlần) Ex: Both Mary and Tom are students. I like both oranges and apples.
Not only but also(không những.....mà còn.....) Ex: Not only Mary but also Tom likes dogs.
Neither nor(không cũng không....., cả 2 đều không) Ex: Neither Mary nor Tom like dogs.
Eitheror(hoặc là hoặc là) Ex: Either Mary or Tom likes dogs.
Câu đồng tình khẳng định: ✚ S + trợ động từ/ to be, too Ex: I like Pop music. My sister does, too. ✚ So + trợ động từ/ to be + S Ex: I am a student. So is my sister.
Câu đồng tình phủ định: ✚ S + trợ động từ/ to be + not, either. Ex: My mom isn't at home. I am not, either.

✚ Neither + trợ động từ/ tobe + S

Ex: He doesn't like English. Neither does his sister.

Câu đề nghị

✚ S + suggest + V-ing

✚ S + suggest that + S + should + V1

Quá khứ đơn sang hiện tại hoàn thành và ngược lại

✚ S + Last +V2/ed + time +ago/in+ mốc thời gian./when + clause

☞ S +have/has + not + V3/ed + for + khoảng thời gian.
+ since + mốc thời gian.

☞ It's + time + since + S +last +V2/ed

☞ The last time + S + V2/ed +was+ time + ago

✚ This is the first time + S + have/has + V3/ed

☞ S + have/has + never + V3/ed + before

✚ S started/began + Ving/to V +.....+khoảng thời gian +ago
+.....in + mốc thời gian./when + clause

☞ S + have/has + V3/ed +for + khoảng thời gian
+since + mốc thời gian

✚ When + did + S + started/begin + to V/Ving.....?

☞ How long + have/has + S + V3/ed....?

✚ PRACTICE (LUYỆN TẬP)

✚ Tự luận cơ bản

Rewrite the sentences, beginning with the words given so that it has similar meaning to the one given

1. I have never read such a romantic story before.

☞ This is _____

2. I have never been to the ballet before.

☞ It is _____

3. They have been living in Germany for 5 years now.

☞ It _____

4. I came to live here three months ago.

☞ I've been _____

5. The Browns haven't visited Paris since 1998.

☞ The last time _____

6. How long have Catherine and Henry been engaged?

☞ When _____

7. I had a cat once, but now I don't any more.

☞ I used _____

8. When I was a child, I usually went to the local park every Sunday afternoon.

☞ When I was a child, I used _____

9. Farmers grow rice in this field.

☞ Rice _____

10. He is carrying out a research on how people spend their money for clothes.

☞ A research _____

11. The police has just released John.

☞ John _____

12. Jack's parents made him study a lot for the entrance exam to high school.

☞ Jack was _____

13. You must see the manager tomorrow morning.
↳ The manager _____
14. The mechanic serviced my car last week.
↳ I had. _____
15. People expect that he will join the company soon.
↳ He _____
16. They believe that touching the head of a Buddha statue is a sign of disrespect.
↳ It _____
17. The leak was repaired by the plumber this morning.
↳ The plumber _____
18. She knows more about it than I do.
↳ I don't _____
19. Apples are usually cheaper than oranges.
↳ Apples are not _____
20. Sally is the cleverest student in the class.
↳ Nobody _____
21. No one in this club is a better swimmer than John.
↳ John swims _____
22. As I get older, I want to travel less.
↳ The older _____
23. Although he had a good salary, he was unhappy in his job.
↳ In spite _____
24. In spite of the cold weather, we went out.
↳ Although _____
25. She was seriously ill but she enjoyed life very much.
↳ Although _____
26. Hoa was busy, so she couldn't go to the party.
↳ Because _____
27. Ba was lazy, so he failed the final exam.
↳ Because of _____
28. She said, "I am taking an important exam next week".
↳ She said _____
29. "Where are you going, Peter?", said Susan.
↳ Susan asked Peter _____
30. "Please do not litter as you are walking along the coast", the guard said to us.
↳ The guard told _____
31. "Why don't we visit the Royal Citadel first?", Thanh said.
↳ Thanh suggested that _____
32. "You'd better spend more time learning English, Mary." said the mom.
↳ Mary's mom _____
33. She doesn't have a computer or a smartphone, so she can't study online.
↳ If _____
34. You can't register for a course abroad if you don't have a passport.
↳ Unless _____
35. They work slowly and ineffectively.
↳ I wish _____
36. I will be late for school.

- ↳ I wish _____
37. I'm sorry I missed your birthday party.
↳ I wish _____
38. It's a pity I didn't take my doctor's advice.
↳ I wish _____
39. He prefers playing computer games to watching TV.
↳ He'd rather _____
40. I would like you to help me put the chair away.
↳ Do you mind _____
41. I'm always nervous when I travel by air.
↳ Traveling _____
42. He suggested visiting Moc Chau to learn about Thai and H'mong people.
↳ "What about _____
43. Keeping the environment clean is very important.
↳ It's _____
44. It is necessary to finish the work today.
↳ You need _____
45. Sally finally managed to get the job.
↳ Sally finally succeeded _____
46. I walk to school in 20 minutes everyday.
↳ It _____
47. We often spend 30 minutes reviewing our lesson before class.
↳ It _____
48. It took him twelve hours to fly from Hanoi to London.
↳ He _____
49. Tam doesn't type as fast as she used to.
↳ Tam used _____
50. I'm really excited about the upcoming pottery workshop
↳ I'm looking _____

Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first one using the word in brackets. Do not change the given words in any ways

1. I last read a book on September 20th. (since)
↳ I _____
2. Ann began to be interested in healthy eating 3 years ago. (has)
↳ Ann _____
3. Someone is going to redecorate the kitchen for us next month. (have)
↳ We _____
4. People hope that cable-car construction to Son Doong Cave will be stopped. (is)
↳ It _____
5. "When are you going to submit your research paper?", my teacher asked me. (was)
↳ My teacher _____
6. Mr. Son spends all his life saving patients. We all admire him. (who)
↳ Mr. Son, _____
7. Andy has a lovely cat. Its fur is white. (whose)
↳ Andy _____
8. Mr. Dean's team has lost the game. He looks very sad. (whose)
↳ Mr Dean, _____

9. I don't have any facebook account. I want to have one soon. (wish)
 ↪ I _____
10. It's pity she doesn't share memories of her trip with me. (wish)
 ↪ I _____
11. It's a pity. I didn't take my doctor's advice. (wish)
 ↪ I _____
12. "Shall we surf the net for the location of Ninh Binh Province?", said she. (suggested)
 ↪ She _____
13. This book is very boring and so is that one. (as)
 ↪ This _____
14. She visits more countries. She has more friends. (more)
 ↪ The _____
15. I don't know much about historical events, so I can't help her with her history homework. (if)
 ↪ I _____
16. I may not have to work tonight. I will go out for dinner. (if)
 ↪ I _____
17. I didn't take my parents' advice, so I got into a lot of troubles. (if)
 ↪ If _____
18. I'm interested in the news about ancient towns. (find)
 ↪ I _____
19. It is going to rain. You should bring a raincoat with you. (so)
 ↪ It _____
20. I couldn't go to the airport to see her off because I was ill. (because of)
 ↪ I _____

✚ Tự luận nâng cao

Rewrite the sentences, using the words in brackets so that the second sentence has the same meaning.

1. How long have you had your new car? (get)
 ↪ When _____
2. Leave the shop or I will call the police. (unless)
 ↪ I'll _____
3. The Lord of Brecon built this castle in 1286. (by)
 ↪ This castle _____
4. Our teachers never let us leave the school. (allowed)
 ↪ We were not _____
5. During the film on TV, the phone rang. (was)
 ↪ While I _____
6. Do you have any plans for next Wednesday evening? (doing)
 ↪ What _____
7. The strong winds blew down the two ancient trees during the storm. (blown)
 ↪ The two ancient trees _____
8. He doesn't have enough money to buy the computer. (too)
 ↪ The computer _____
9. "You should start a new hobby, Mr. Smith" the doctor said. (take)
 ↪ The doctor advised _____
10. The man suddenly realized that the neighbor was watching him. (watched)
 ↪ The man suddenly realized that he _____

11. I could never have passed the exam without your help. (you)
 ↳ I could never _____
12. We paid some people to landscape the garden for us last year. (had)
 ↳ We had _____
13. "How about going to the cinema?", said Kate. (suggested)
 ↳ Kate _____
14. My advice to you is to talk to your parents. (would)
 ↳ If _____
15. Mary wasn't strong enough to lift the box. (weak)
 ↳ Mary was _____
16. They wanted to apologize for their behavior: that's why they paid for dinner. (in order)
 ↳ They paid for dinner _____
17. It isn't necessary to bring drinks as they are included in the package. (have to)
 ↳ You _____
18. Tom said, "I will be playing tennis when you arrive." (He)
 ↳ Tom said _____
19. When I was a child, I would go to the park every Saturday afternoon. (used)
 ↳ When I was a child, _____
20. They moved to this suburb in 1990. (lived)
 ↳ They _____
21. Mike was interested in North American history in his school days. (interest)
 ↳ Mike _____
22. When it comes to population, Beijing's is much bigger than Auckland's. (populated)
 ↳ Beijing is _____
23. Do you think you could give me a hand to move the sofa? (mind)
 ↳ Would you _____
24. I think Jerry really likes Simon. (keen)
 ↳ Jerry _____
25. The Queen is opening the new school. (opened)
 ↳ The new school _____
26. Mark started learning French two years ago. (learned)
 ↳ Mark has _____
27. Do you own that car? (yours)
 ↳ Is _____
28. Look at those black clouds! There is rain arriving. (going)
 ↳ Look at those black clouds! It _____
29. I don't have a new computer. (wish)
 ↳ I _____
30. The teenagers were stealing my car when I arrived. (being)
 ↳ My car _____
31. The last time John saw me was in 2000. (since)
 ↳ John hasn't _____
32. I haven't gone swimming for nearly a year. (last)
 ↳ The _____
33. I regret not speaking to Ms. Hoa sooner. (had)
 ↳ I wish _____
34. Yesterday, they cut down two old trees in the local park. (were)

- ↳ Yesterday, two _____
35. I walked quietly because I didn't want to wake the baby. (so as)
↳ I walked quietly _____
36. This is the first time I have ever drunk coffee. (never)
↳ I _____
37. Do you know how many letter are delivered by the post office every year? (delivers)
↳ Do you know how many _____
38. Stop interrupting me all the time? (would)
↳ I wish _____
39. My car keys are possibly in the kitchen. (might)
↳ My car keys _____
40. Is it a problem if I open the window a little? (mind)
↳ _____
41. Kate is a teacher. (as)
↳ Kate _____
42. I met your sister by chance at the airport last week. (ran)
↳ I _____
43. The doctor told me to give up smoking. (stop)
↳ The doctor told _____
44. Why don't we leave after breakfast on Saturday? (leaving)
↳ How _____
45. This is the most boring film I have ever seen! (more)
↳ I have _____
46. We will have to leave early tomorrow. (set)
↳ We will _____
47. We should leave here now. (left)
↳ It's _____
48. He locked the door to prevent the prisoner escaping. (so that)
↳ He locked _____
49. Please don't smoke in this room. (rather)
↳ I'd _____
50. The weather was beautiful but we didn't go on the picnic. (in spite)
↳ We didn't _____

TỔNG ÔN VIẾT LẠI CÂU ĐỒNG NGHĨA

Rewrite the sentences, beginning with the words given so that it has similar meaning to the one given

1. "Don't forget to lock the door," the mother said to the boy.
↳ The mother _____
2. The mother made the boy tidy up the room.
↳ The boy _____
3. After he had graduated from university, he went abroad to work.
↳ Having _____
4. Housewives do not have to spend a lot of time doing housework anymore.
↳ No longer _____
5. It is said that Galileo invented the telescope.
↳ Galileo _____
6. The last time I met Mary was three years ago.
↳ I haven't _____
7. What does your mother do?
↳ What is _____
8. I am not a rich businessman and I can't afford to buy an expensive car.
↳ If _____
9. I spent an hour revising what he had already learnt for the test.
↳ It took _____
10. My father would rather read newspaper than listen to the radio.
↳ My father prefers _____

Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first one using the word in brackets. Do not change the given words in any ways

1. The old man is working in this company. I love his daughter. (whose)
↳ _____
2. Nam defeated the former champion in three sets. Then he won their inter-school table tennis championship. (Having)
↳ _____
3. Although she was disabled, she was quite confident the first time she practiced this sport. (Despite)
↳ _____
4. Mary doesn't like music. Her brother doesn't either. (Neither)
↳ _____
5. The students will be awarded the present. The students' reports are very valuable. (whose)
↳ _____
6. Jane didn't change his working style. He was sacked. (If)
↳ _____
7. Hai had all the necessary qualifications for the job. He wasn't offered the job. (Despite)
↳ _____
8. She closed the door. She wanted to focus on the lesson. (to)
↳ _____
9. He was betrayed by his partner. He suffered huge losses. (Betrayed)
↳ _____

10. She doesn't love him. He is sad.

(If)



TỔNG ÔN TÌM LỖI SAI

Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the underlined part that needs correction in each of the following questions.

1. People are worry about COVID-19 Pandemic, which has caused huge human tolls.
A. worry B. huge C. which D. about
2. Mr. Will is going to collect all the bags and taken them to the garbage dump.
A. going B. all C. taken D. garbage
3. The children laughed happy when they saw the monkeys eating bananas.
A. laughed B. happy C. saw D. eating
4. I asked him how far was it to the station if I went there by taxi.
A. asked B. was it C. if D. by taxi
5. Although he was tired, but he still went to work yesterday.
A. was B. but C. went D. to work
6. The artist tried stimulate interest in painting by talking his students to the museums.
A. stimulate B. interest C. by talking D. to the
7. Mumps are a very common disease, which usually affects children.
A. are B. common disease C. which D. usually
8. Before she moved here, Arlene had been president of the organization since four years.
A. Before B. had been C. of the D. since
9. I really wish I have a laptop to replace this old-fashioned computer.
A. to replace B. really C. have D. old-fashioned
10. One of the most serious problem now is the spread of COVID-19.
A. the B. spread C. problem D. is
11. The bike he has just bought is more expensive as mine.
A. as B. is C. The bike D. just
12. When I was a student, I loved reading and fill my free time with adventure novels.
A. a student B. with C. fill D. When
13. When her doll was lost, she cried very hardly for half an hour.
A. When B. was lost C. hardly D. an hour
14. You mustn't do any cooking as I've already prepared something.
A. mustn't B. any C. I've D. something
15. My sister has so many homeworks to do that she has no time to go out.
A. has B. many homeworks C. that D. no time

🌟 Bộ đề kết hợp trắc nghiệm + tự luận 40 câu (3 bài Test)

TEST 1

I. MULTIPLE CHOICE

Mark the letter **A, B, C** or **D** to indicate the word whose underlined part differs from the other three in pronunciation in each of the following questions.

1. A. intermediate B. immediate C. medium D. medicine
 2. A. bury B. hurry C. hungry D. thunder

Mark the letter **A, B, C** or **D** to indicate the word that differs from the other three in the position of primary stress in each of the following question.

3. A. convenient B. encourage C. material D. modernize
 4. A. television B. decoration C. introduction D. expectation

Mark the letter **A, B, C** or **D** to indicate the underlined part that needs correction in each of the following questions.

5. My father used to giving me some good advice whenever I had a problem.
 A. giving B. some good C. whenever D. a problem
 6. The better you are at English, more chance you have to get a job with international organizations.
 A. better B. are at C. more chance D. get a job
 7. There are differences and similarities between Vietnamese and American culture.
 A. There are B. and similarities C. Vietnamese D. culture

Mark the letter **A, B, C** or **D** to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

8. _____ I were you, I would take a taxi to the airport.
 A. If B. Unless C. Because D. When
 9. The boy _____ eyes are brown is my friend.
 A. who B. whom C. which D. whose
 10. I'm going to have my house _____ this weekend.
 A. redecorates B. redecorated C. redecorating D. redecorate
 11. Paul was _____ disappointed with his examination results that he was sad all week.
 A. too B. enough C. so D. such
 12. I wish I _____ a car. I'm tired of catching the bus to work every day.
 A. had had B. had C. have D. will have
 13. She said that she had been doing her homework _____ 8 o'clock.
 A. about B. since C. at D. for
 14. The situation continues to get worse and _____.
 A. bad B. worst C. worse D. badly
 15. Please shut the gate _____ the dog won't get out.
 A. in order for B. in order to C. so as to D. so that
 16. I was _____ to find that they had already left.

- A. disappointing B. disappoint C. disappointed D. disappointment

Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the most suitable response to complete each of the following exchanges.

17. Tim: "Don't fail to send your parents my regards." Judy: " _____ "
 A. It's my pleasure. B. You are welcome. C. Thanks, I will. D. Good idea, thanks.
18. Lora: "Your new blouse looks gorgeous, Helen!" Helen: " _____ "
 A. It's up to you. B. Thanks, I bought it at Macy's.
 C. I'd rather not. D. You can say that again.

Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the word(s) CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.

19. Those who don't have computer skills are really **behind the time**.
 A. out of work B. out of fashion C. out of date D. out of question
20. Fruits and vegetables on the island are **abundant**, which enables the islanders to make a fortune.
 A. plentiful B. different C. effective D. economical

Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the word(s) OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.

21. Population growth rates **vary** among regions and even among countries within the same region.
 A. restrain B. stay unchanged C. remain unstable D. fluctuate
22. In some countries, the disease **burden** could be prevented through environmental improvements.
 A. something to suffer B. something enjoyable
 C. something sad D. something to entertain

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct word or phrase that best fits each of the numbered blanks.

Further education

Around the age of sixteen, you must make one of the biggest decisions of your life. Do I stay on at school and hopefully go on to university (23) _____? Do I leave and start work or begin a training course? The decision is yours, but it may be (24) _____ remembering two things: there's more unemployment among people who haven't been to university, and people who have the right (25) _____ will have a big advantage in the competition for jobs. If you decide to go straight into a job, there are many opportunities for training. Getting qualifications (bằng cấp) will (26) _____ you to get on more quickly in many careers, and evening classes allow you to learn while you earn. Starting work and taking a break to study when you're older is another possibility. This way, you can save up money for your student days, as well as (27) _____ practical work experience.

23. A. after B. later C. past D. then
 24. A. worth B. necessary C. important D. useful
 25. A. notes B. papers C. arts D. skills
 26. A. make B. help C. let D. give
 27. A. getting B. making C. taking D. doing

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

Getting the job you deserve

Many of us wish we were in a better-paid or more interesting job but don't know how to start looking for something else. If this describes you, the first thing you need to do is update your

résumé. A résumé is a tool that can be used to obtain a job interview. Along with a cover letter, it is the first impression a prospective employee makes on a potential employer. Therefore, it is important that a résumé provide as much relevant information as possible while remaining **brief**. A résumé should be no more than two sides of A4 paper. Make it any longer and it won't get read. A résumé must be neatly typed, with at least 3/4 inch margins on all four sides. Use underlining, capital letters, and asterisks to highlight important information. A résumé should be single-spaced with an extra line of space between blocks of information. Begin a résumé with your name, address, and home and business telephone numbers. Do not include age, marital status, or other personal facts. Next, many résumés list a career goal, followed by a chronological outline of work experience, starting with the most recent job and working backward including a brief description of relevant duties and skills. Finally, include an outline of your educational background from the most recent backward. Include dates, schools, and diplomas awarded. Before you send it, make sure you check your spelling and grammar, or get someone else to go over it if you can.

28. What is the best title for this piece?

- A. How to Get a Job.
- B. How to Prepare a Résumé.
- C. How to Find Your Goal in Life.
- D. How to Write a Cover Letter.

29. What is the function of a résumé?

- A. To describe your employment and educational background in extensive detail.
- B. To provide an impressive example of your writing and typing skills.
- C. To act as a tool for getting you a job interview.
- D. To give an employer a good first impression of you.

30. On a résumé, which job should be listed first?

- A. Your most recent job.
- B. Your most relevant job
- C. Your first job.
- D. Your most important job.

31. The word "**brief**" is closest in meaning to

- A. short
- B. informative
- C. precise
- D. accurate

32. Which of the following should **NOT** be on your résumé?

- A. Your name, telephone, and fax number.
- B. The year you received your bachelor's degree.
- C. Your nationality and the fact that you are single.
- D. A description of the tasks you did in your last job.

II. WRITING

Finish the second sentence so that it has similar meaning to the first one, beginning with the given words.

33. "Don't swim: too far out," she said to them.

↳ She warned _____

34. Her parents have just sold that old car.

↳ That old car _____

35. I was too tired to climb the mountain.

↳ I was _____

36. It's a pity that our teacher isn't here at the moment.

↳ I wish _____

Combine two sentences into a new one using the given words in bracket. Do not change the given words in any way.

37. That's our dog. The postman was bitten by it. (bit)

↳ _____

38. They cancelled the party. It rained heavily. (since)
 ↻ _____
39. No one has a key. We can't get into the house. (can)
 ↻ _____
40. He had a good salary. He was unhappy in his job. (in spite of)
 ↻ _____

TEST 2

I. MULTIPLE CHOICE

Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the word whose underlined part differs from the other three in pronunciation in each of the following questions.

1. A. should B. shout C. about D. amount
 2. A. shop B. problem C. top D. glove

Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the word that differs from the other three in the position of primary stress in each of the following questions.

3. A. rusty B. career C. accent D. mission
 4. A. versatile B. openness C. financial D. housekeeper

Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the underlined part that needs . correction in each of the following questions.

5. She learned through bitter experience that he was not to be trust.
 A. learned B. bitter experience C. was not D. trust
 6. Your classmates won't trust you if you're always told tales, Alvin.
 A. classmates B. won't trust C. if D. told
 7. About the guidance of the conductor, an orchestra creates music and harmonies.
 A. About B. the conductor C. an orchestra D. harmonies

Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions :

8. There are two points _____ I wanted to make
 A. who B. where C. which D. whose
 9. Will we _____ to the wedding celebrations by them?
 A. invite B. invited C. be inviting D. be invited
 10. I like my old phone, but this new model _____ it out of the water.
 A. blows B. moves C. throws D. takes
 11. If I were you, I more carefully in the rain.
 A. will drive B. would drive C. was driving D. drove
 12. All areas of _____ country will have _____ rain tonight.
 A. the - some B. the - any C. a - some D. a - any
 13. She'll miss the bus if she _____ soon.
 A. isn't leaving B. didn't leave C. don't leave D. doesn't leave
 14. You've done some stupid things before, but this really takes the _____
 A. sausage B. beef C. biscuit D. hamburger
 15. She left _____ an "m" in accommodation.
 A. out B. in C. up D. down
 16. Is there _____ university _____ this town?
 A. an-in B. a - in C. an-at D. an - in

Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the most suitable response to complete each of the following exchanges.

17. John: "Can you do the cooking today?" Linda: " _____"
 A. All right B. Yes, please C. No, thanks D. I know tha
18. Linh: "Let's go to Nha Trang for the weekend!" Daniel: "
 A. Oh, you are good to say so B. Yes, let's
 C. That's a good idea D. That's a nice day.

Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the word(s) CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.

19. It was **inevitable** that there would be job losses.
 A. unbelievable B. unavoidable C. unnecessary D. incredible
20. A fund will be **set up** for the dead men's families.
 A. provided B. destroyed C. produced D. established

Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the word(s) OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.

21. If petrol price **goes up** any more, I will have to use a bicycle.
 A. increase B. ascend C. develop D. raise
22. How many countries **took part in** the last SEA Games?
 A. performed B. hosted C. participated D. succeeded

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct word or phrase that best fits each of the numbered blanks.

Rice is eaten by Vietnamese people every day. It often grows in tropical countries such as Vietnam, Thailand and Malaysia. People (23) _____ been : growing rice for thousands or years. The seeds are planted in special beds to grow into young rice plants. Then they are (24) _____ to fields covered with muddy water called paddies. The fields of rice look very (25) _____ After 3 or 5 months, the rice is ready to be picked. People often drain away before collecting rice. Eating rice is (26) _____ special action in the world. They don't use spoons or forks to enjoy bowls of rice. However, they use two short sticks known (27) _____ chopsticks to put rice into their mouths.

23. A. has B. have C. had D. having
24. A. take B. taking C. to take D. taken
25. A. beauty B. beautify C. beautiful D. beautifully
26. A. a B. an C. the D. x
27. A. with B. as C. of D. like

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

Discipline is an important virtue in one's life. Discipline means complete obedience to certain rules and regulations. Life without discipline is just like a house without a roof. It is absolutely essential for successful life.

Discipline is the structural and **fundamental** unit of a successful person. It is essential for us at home, for soldiers in battlefield, for students in school, for players in playground. A team of experienced players often lose the match because of indiscipline in the team. A horrible battle can be - won by a disciplined army.

Discipline is very important in a student's life. We must obey our teachers, must **follow** the rules of the school. We should be sincere, dedicated, firm, and focus on our goals. If we violate, we will suffer a great deal in our future.

As a student in the future of the country, we need to be very punctual to our routine, hard working, healthy and fit. Discipline demands self-control and dedication. It leads to the formation of a good society and nation as well.

28. What is discipline?
 A. obedience to rules and regulations B. house without a roof
 C. successful life D. rules and regulations
29. What does the word "fundamental" mean?
 A. tiny B. trivial C. basic D. small
30. Discipline is _____
 A. student's life B. our teachers C. decication D. very important
31. The word "follow" can best be replaced by _____
 A. move B. obey C. remember D. forget
32. Discipline requires _____
 A. a good society B. a good nation
 C. routine D. self-control and dedication

II. WRITING

Finish the second sentence so that it has similar meaning to the first one, beginning with the given words.

33. "Why don't we go out for a walk?" Lan said
 ↳ Lan _____
34. He started study Chinese five years ago.
 ↳ He has _____
35. I think you should study harder for the exam.
 ↳ If _____
36. Your dictionary is more expensive than mine.
 ↳ My dictionary _____

Combine two sentences into a new one using the given words in bracket. Do • not change the given words in any way.

37. It's a pity. I can't play the guitar. (wish)
 ↳ _____
38. I don't really like her. I admire her achievements. (although)
 ↳ _____
39. She has written many essays. This is the best one. (ever)
 ↳ _____
40. It's raining heavily. We cancelled our journey. (so)
 ↳ _____

TEST 3

I. MULTIPLE CHOICE

Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the word whose underlined part differs from the other three in pronunciation in each of the following questions.

1. A. customer B. truck C. include D. custard
 2. A. change B. chemistry C. choose D. chease

Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the word whose underlined part differs from the other three in the position of primary stress in each of the following questions.

3. A. comment B. command C. compose D. machine
 4. A. innovation B. separation C. installation D. environment

Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the underlined part that needs correction in each of the following questions.

5. It was an extremelyfrightened experience in my life.
 A. It was B. extremely C. frightened D. in
6. I know you're too busyto stay, but I look forward to see you again.
 A. too busy B. to stay C. but D. to see
7. My aunt has beguntaught English for twenty years.
 A. has begun B. taught C. for D. years

Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

8. I'm hungry, I _____ anything since 8 am.
 A. hasn't eaten B. haven't eaten C. haven't eated D. don't eat
9. He said that he was coming _____.
 A. tomorrow after B. yesterday C. the next day D. following day
10. Help me, _____ ?
 A. will you B. won't you C. do you D. don't you
11. If there were flying saucers, there _____ traces of their landing.
 A. would be B. will be C. are D. is
12. If you take a train or bus, you must pay a _____.
 A. trip B. fee C. fare D. commission
13. If we don't _____ on electricity, there will be power cut.
 A. economic B. economics C. economical D. economize
14. My uncle _____ Paris two or three times.
 A. is visiting B. has visited C. was visiting D. often visits
15. He is a person _____ friends trust him.
 A. who B. his C. whose D. that
16. If only I _____ a flower, I'd be a sunflower.
 A. am B. be C. were D. was

Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the most suitable response to complete each of the following exchanges.

17. Laura: "Have a good holiday!" Tim: " _____ "
 A. You have. B. You too. C. You will. D. You do.
18. Waiter: "Would you like a drink?" Customer: " _____ "
 A. I don't like coffee B. Coffee, please. C. I prefer tea. D. I want.

Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the word(s) CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.

19. I want to hear the news. Can you switch on the radio?
 A. turn down B. turn on C. turn up D. turn off
20. Ralph Nader was the most prominent leader of the U.S consumer protection movement.
 A. casual B. significant C. promiscuous D. aggressive

Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the word(s) OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.

21. Fruit and vegetables grew in abundance on the island. The islanders even exported the surplus.
 A. large quantity B. small quantity C. excess D. sufficiency
22. His conclusion is congruous with one previously drawn by Mayer.
 A. improper B. unstable C. unsuitable D. indifferent

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct word or phrase that best fits each of the numbered blanks.

Garbage is a serious problem in U.S. Every year, Americans produce about 308 billion pounds. A lot of the garbage goes (23)_____the landfills. But many landfills do not have room (24)_____all the garbage.

One answer to the garbage problem is recycling. Half of all the garbage in the U.S can be (25)_____and use again.

Recycling helps us solve the landfills problem and (26)_____enough energy too. When people recycle newspapers, they save (27)_____when they recycle glass, plastic, or cans, they save oil and electricity. Recycling is good for everyone.

23. A. at B. for C. into D. to
24. A. to B. for C. from D. in
25. A. reused B. recycled C. product D. reduced
26. A. save B. saving C. to save D. saves
27. A. tree B. paper C. electricity D. water

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

In the United States, people celebrate Mother's Day and Father's Day. Mother's Day is celebrated on the second Sunday in May. On this occasion, mother usually receives greeting cards and gifts from her husband and children. The best gift of all for an American Mom is a day of leisure. The majority of American mothers have outside jobs as well as housework, so their working days are often very hard. The working mother enjoys the traditional Mother's Day custom of breakfast (or brunch) cooked by her family and served to her on a tray in bed. Later in the day, it is also traditional for the extended family group to get together for dinner, either in a restaurant or in one of their homes. Flowers are an important part of Mother's Day. Mothers are often given a corsage or plant for the occasion, particularly if they are elderly.

Father's Day is celebrated throughout the United States and Canada on the third Sunday in June. The holiday customs are similar to Mother's Day. Dad also receives greeting cards and gifts from his family and enjoys a day of leisure.

28. Where do people celebrate Father's Day and Mother's Day?
A. In Viet Nam B. In the USA C. In many countries D. In the world
29. When is Mother's Day celebrated?
A. On the second Sunday in May B. On the second of October
C. On the third Sunday in June D. On the eight of March
30. Do the majority of American mothers have to work hard every day?
A. No, they only do the housework. B. Yes, they do.
C. No, they don't have a job. D. No, they don't.
31. What is an important part of Mother's Day?
A. gift B. flower C. present D. all are correct
32. When is Father's day celebrated?
A. On the second Sunday in May. B. On the second of October.
C. On the third Sunday in June. D. On the eight of March.

II. WRITING

Finish the second sentence so that it has similar meaning to the first one, beginning with the given words.

33. "You shouldn't give up smoking as soon as possible".
↳ The doctor advised me _____
34. People said that he grew a lot of cabbages in his field.
↳ He was _____

35. Following your directions is difficult.

↳ It is difficult _____

36. He likes swimming and sunbathing.

↳ He is interested _____

Combine two sentences into a new one using the given words in bracket. Do not change the given words in any way.

37. The professor is excellent. I am taking his course. (whose)

↳ _____

38. Mr. Tibbs doesn't drive carefully. Mr Smith doesn't drive carefully, either. (Neither)

↳ _____

39. The shoes are too big. My mother can't feet her feet. (so)

↳ _____

40. Ted has won a medal. Tony has won a medal, too. (both)

↳ _____

TEST 4

Choose the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently.

1. A. fear B. heading C. clearing D. realize
2. A. stamps B. hats C. books D. clubs

Choose the word that its main stress is placed differently from the others.

3. A. exhibition B. affirmative C. understanding D. opposition
4. A. woman B. carbon C. follow D. begin

Choose the word (A, B, C or D) that best completes the sentence.

5. Lan and her family had a _____ trip to their home village.
A. days trip B. two-days trip C. day-two trip D. two-day trip
6. The children felt _____ when their mother was coming back home.
A. excited B. excitemen C. exciting D. excitedly
7. He can't buy that bicycle because he has _____ money.
A. much B. a few C. little D. a lot of
8. Why _____ go to the park for a change?
A. we should not B. don't we C. we don't D. we should
9. The boy _____ eyes are brown is my friend.
A. whose B. whom C. who D. that
10. She'd love to take part in the evening class. _____, she has to look after the baby in the evening.
A. Although B. However C. Therefore D. but
11. You _____ better if you took this medicine.
A. would feel B. feel C. felt D. will feel
12. The football match was postponed _____ the bad weather.
A. because B. because of C. despite D. in spite of
13. They are living in a house that _____ in 1930.
A. built B. was building C. was built D. is built

Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the underlined part that needs correction in each of the following questions

14. My father asked me to pay much attention to English next year.
A. asked B. to pay C. much attention D. next year.
15. According to a team of scientists, there are evidence that Mount Everest is still rising.
A. According to B. there are C. that D. Rising.
16. At the moment I am spending my weekend go to camping with my friends.
A. At the moment B. spending C. go to D. camping

Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct response to each of the following exchanges.

17. Ellen: " _____?" Tom: "He's tall and thin with blue eyes"
A. How is John doing? B. What does John like?
C. Who does John look like? D. What does John look like?
18. Kate: "How lovely your cats are!" David " _____"
A. Can you say it again? B. I love them, too.
C. Really? They are. D. Thank you. It's nice of you to say so.

Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the word(s) OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.

19. Later that evening, when I was almost asleep, the sound of a crowd brought me back to full consciousness.

- A. afraid B. aware C. awake D. tired

20. There were so many members of the political party who had gone against the leader that he had to resign.

- A. invited B. opposed C. insisted D. supported

Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the word(s) CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.

21. When we travel overseas we hope to go to Iceland.

- A. to foreign lands B. with foreigners C. on the sea D. by water

22. The guests at Japanese Embassy reception enjoyed it very much but refused to eat the raw fish

- A. rotten B. fresh C. uncooked D. stale

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct word or phrase that best fits each of the numbered blanks.

It can be shown in facts and figures that cycling is the cheapest, most convenient, and most environmentally desirable form of transport (23) _____ towns, but such cold calculations do not mean much on a frosty winter morning. The real appeal of cycling is that it is so (24) _____. It has none of the difficulties and tensions of other ways of travelling so you are more cheerful after a ride, even though the rush hour.

The first thing a non-cyclist says to you is: "But isn't it (25) _____ dangerous?". It would be foolish to deny the danger of sharing the road with motor vehicles and it must be admitted that there are alarming (26) _____ of accidents involving cyclists. However, although police records (27) _____ that the car driver is often to blame, the answer lies with the cyclist. It is possible to ride in such a way as to reduce risks to a minimum.

23. A. in B. to C. on D. at
24. A. careful B. enjoyable C. excited D. boring
25. A. comfortably B. strangely C. terribly D. expectedly
26. A. size B. deal C. number D. digit
27. A. exhibit B. display C. indicate D. point

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

How can scientists predict earthquakes? Earthquakes are not scattered anywhere but happen in certain areas. They happen in places where pieces of the Earth's surface meet. For example, earthquakes often occur on the west-coast of North and South America, around the Mediterranean Sea, and along the Pacific coast of Asia.

Another way to predict earthquakes is to look for changes in the earth's surface, like a sudden drop of water level in the ground. Some people say animals can predict earthquakes. Before earthquakes, people have seen chickens sitting in trees, fish jumping out of the water, snakes leaving their holes and other animals acting strangely.

After an earthquake happens, people can die from lack of food, water, and medical supplies. The amount of destruction caused by an earthquake depends on where it happens, what time it happens, and how strong it is. It also depends on types of buildings, soil conditions and population. Of the 6000 earthquakes on the earth each year, only about fifteen cause great damage and many deaths.

28. After an earthquake, as a result of _____ people may die.

A. lack of food B. lack of friendship C. lack of knowledge D. lack of information

29. Earthquakes happen in certain areas where _____ .
A. the population is large B. the soil conditions are stable
C. pieces of the earth's surface meet D. many buildings are built
30. Earthquakes often happen along _____ .
A. the Pacific coast of Asia B. the east-coast of South America
C. the coast of Australia D. the east-coast of North America
31. The amount of destruction caused by an earthquake does not depend on
A. where it happens B. what time it happens C. air condition D. types of building
32. The passage mainly discusses _____
A. water currents B. strange animal behaviors
C. the damage caused by earthquakes D. water beneath the earth's surface

Choose the second sentence which has the same meaning as that of the root one.

33. The girl is very lovely. She lives next door to us
A. The girl who lives next door to us is very lovely.
B. The girl lives next door to us is very lovely.
C. The girl whose lives next door to us is very lovely.
D. The girl which lives next door to us is very lovely.
34. Please don't touch the things on display.
A. Would you mind not touching things on display?
B. Would you mind touching things on display?
C. Would you mind if I touched things on display?
D. Would you mind if I didn't touch things on display?
35. He is sorry he cannot speak English well
A. He wishes he could speak English well.
B. He wishes he couldn't speak English well.
C. He wishes he could speak English.
D. He wishes he can speak English well.
36. Although he is intelligent, he doesn't do well at school.
A. In spite of he is intelligence, he doesn't do well at school.
B. In spite his intelligence, he doesn't do well at school.
C. In spite of his intelligence, he doesn't do well at school.
D. Although his intelligence, he doesn't do well at school.

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the meaningful sentence from the cues given.

37. He/read/book/his room/when/he/hear/big explosion/.
A. He was reading books on his room when he heard a big explosion.
B. He was reading books in his room when he heard a big explosion.
C. He read books in his room when he heard a big explosion.
D. He was reading books in his room when he was hearing a big explosion.
38. We/ used/ wear/ uniforms/when/we/be/school.
A. We used to wear uniforms when we were at school.
B. We used wear uniforms when we were at school.
C. We used to wearing uniforms when we were at school.
D. We used to wear uniforms when we were in school.
39. We/be/very/tired/last night/because/we/play/football/all the afternoon/.
A. We were very tired last night because we play all the afternoon.

- B. We were very tired last night because we played all the afternoon.
 C. We were very tired last night because we were playing all the afternoon.
 D. We are very tired last night because we played all the afternoon.

40. The case/be/ so heavy/ Nam/ could/put/ on the rack/.
 A. The case was such heavy that Nam could not put it on the rack.
 B. The case was so heavy that Nam could put it on the rack.
 C. The case was heavy that Nam could not put it on the rack.
 D. The case was so heavy that Nam could not put it on the rack.

TEST 5

Choose the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently.

1. A. house B. happen C. hair D. honor
 2. A. finishes B. provides C. approaches D. crashes

Choose the word that its main stress is placed differently from the others.

3. A. replace B. control C. escape D. mention
 4. A. enormous B. dangerous C. successful D. expensive

Choose the word (A, B, C or D) that best completes the sentence.

5. Companies now realize that _____ want products that will not only work effectively but also save money.
 A. consumed B. consumes C. consumers D. consumption
6. The ones about _____ I have been worried these days are the students of mine.
 A. that B. whom C. whose D. which
7. They never came to class late, and _____.
 A. neither I did B. neither did I C. I did either D. so did I
8. I hope _____ to know this beautiful city better.
 A. to get B. to need C. to appear D. to have
9. Jeff completely ignored what I said and _____ on eating.
 A. went B. put C. tried D. depended
10. Mr. Trung, who teaches Maths here, speaks very _____ English.
 A. well B. best C. good D. fluently
11. Watching TV all day is a bad habit _____ we get no exercise and eat unhealthy snacks.
 A. therefore B. because C. but D. though
12. Are you _____ teaching on Saturday mornings this term?
 A. enjoy B. likely C. busy D. expected
13. I suggest that we should _____ people from catching fish by using electricity.
 A. let B. prohibit C. encourage D. relate

Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the underlined part that needs correction in each of the following questions

14. I asked her whether was there a fridge in the kitchen.
 A. asked B. whether C. was there D. in
15. People have used leather to make shoes since hundreds of years.
 A. have used B. to make C. since D. of
16. My father's motorbike is using too many gas now.
 A. My father's B. is using C. too many D. now

Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct response to each of the following exchanges.

17. Vương Khoa: “ _____ ” Trương Thanh: “Why not?”
 A. How about cooking the meal now? B. Have you cooked the meal?
 C. You should cook the meal now D. We’d better be cooking the meal.

18. Sue: “Thank you very much for your donation.” Peter: “ _____.”
 A. Yes, do it now B. Not a chance C. Sure, I’ll do it D. It’s my pleasure

Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the word(s) OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.

19. In Vietnam, there are few **public** transport options, so many people rely on motorbikes to get around.
 A. private B. popular C. open D. secret

20. She **failed** to get into medical university.
 A. didn’t succeed B. passed C. qualified D. satisfied

Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the word(s) CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.

21. I am **pleased** that you passed your exams with good results.
 A. unhappy B. delighted C. dissatisfied D. bored
22. Well, **shopping isn’t my cup of tea either**. I’d rather stay at home and read a book.
 A. I do not enjoy shopping at all B. I must have regular meals while shopping
 C. I don’t usually drink tea while shopping D. I enjoy shopping tremendously

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct word or phrase that best fits each of the numbered blanks.

Japan, (23) _____ on the Ring of Fire on the edge of the Pacific Ocean, has suffered some major earthquakes over the years. However, nothing before compared to the triple disaster of March 11, 2011: a massive earthquake followed by powerful tsunamis (24)_____ led to a serious nuclear accident.

The horrors began shortly before three (25)____ the afternoon local time with a 9.0-magnitude earthquake. Its epicenter was nearly 20 miles (26)____ the floor of the Pacific Ocean, about 80 miles east of the Japanese city of Sendai. The quake was one of the most powerful ever recorded and the (27)_____ to hit this region of Japan.

23. A. was B. lied C. situated D. placed
 24. A. who B. which C. whom D. when
 25. A. in B. at C. over D. On
 26. A. below B. on C. upper D. lower
 27. A. strong B. stronger C. strongest D. strength

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

Many people now think that teachers give pupils too much homework. They say that it is unnecessary for children to work at home in their free time. Moreover, they argue that most teachers do not properly plan the homework tasks they give to pupils. The result is that pupils have to repeat tasks, which they have already done at school.

Recently many parents complained about the difficult homework which teachers gave to their children. The Greek parents said that most of the homework was a waste of time, and they wanted to stop it. Spain and Turkey are two countries, which stopped homework recently. In Denmark, West Germany and several other countries in Europe, teachers cannot set homework at weekends. In Holland, teachers allow pupils to stay at school to do their homework. The children are free to help one another. Similar arrangements also exist in some British schools.

Most people agree that homework is unfair. A pupil who can do his homework in a quiet and comfortable room is in a much better position than a pupil who does his homework in a small, noisy room with the television on. Some parents help their children with their homework. Other parents take no interest at all in their children's homework.

It is important, however, that teachers talk to parents about homework. A teacher suggests suitable tasks for parents to do with their children. Parents are often better at teaching their own children.

28. According to many parents, _____.
A. a lot of homework has not been planned properly
B. teachers do not set enough homework.
C. children are too lazy to do
D. children shouldn't be given marks for homework
29. According to the writer, many parents would like their children to _____.
A. do homework both at school and at home
B. have test homework
C. do homework at school only
D. do more difficult homework
30. Homework is unfair because _____.
A. C&D
B. Some pupils have to help their parents with housework and some others do not
C. Some parents help their children with their homework while some others do not
D. Some pupils do their homework in a quiet and comfortable room while some others do homework in a small, noisy room
31. Pick out the statement that is not true.
A. Only a small number of people think homework is fair.
B. Teachers should advise the parents about how to work together with their children at home.
C. All parents show great interest in their children's homework.
D. Children can do their homework at school and help each other in some schools in Britain.
32. Greek parents thought _____.
A. their children's homework was useless
B. their children's homework was too easy
C. their children's homework was useful
D. more time should be allowed for homework
- Choose the second sentence which has the same meaning as that of the root one.**
33. "I will call the police if you don't give me back my bicycle".
A. Unless you give me back my bicycle, I won't call the police.
B. Unless you give me back my bicycle, I will call the police.
C. Unless you don't give me back my bicycle, I will call the police.
D. Unless you gave me back my bicycle, I would call the police.
34. No one has asked me that question before.
A. I have ever been asked that question before.
B. That question has ever been asked me by no one before.
C. That question has never been asked me before by anyone.
D. I have never been asked that question before.
35. Nam forgot to take his raincoat, so he got wet.
A. Nam got wet, so he forgot to take his raincoat.
B. Nam got wet; however, he forgot to take his raincoat.

- C. Nam got wet because he forgot to take his raincoat.
D. Nam got wet although he forgot to take his raincoat.

36. Janet said to me, "Have you ever seen a UFO?"

- A. Janet told me if I had ever seen a UFO.
B. Janet wanted to know whether I have ever seen a UFO.
C. Janet asked me if I had ever seen a UFO.
D. Janet asked me have I ever seen a UFO.

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the meaningful sentence from the cues given.

37. It/ be / necessary / have a day / celebrate / our parents

- A. It is necessary to have a day for celebrate for our parents.
B. It is necessity to have a day to celebrate for our parents.
C. It is necessary to have a day to celebrate for our parents.
D. It is necessary to have a day to celebrate to our parents.

38. Although / he /tired / he / have to / finish / homework.

- A. Although he tired, he has to finish the homework.
B. Although he is tired, he has to finish his homework.
C. Although he is tired, he have to finish the homework.
D. Although he was tired, he has to finish his homework.

39. Children / should have / special day / express / feeling / memories / /love/their parents.

- A. Children should have a special day expressing their feeling, memories and love for their parents.
B. Children should have a special day to express their feeling, memories and love for their parents.
C. Children should have a special day express their feeling, memories and love for their parents.
D. Children should have a special day expressing their feeling, memories and love to their parents.

40. The novels / I / just / read / interesting.

- A. The novels whom I have just read is interesting
B. The novels who I have just read are interesting
C. The novels which I had just read is interesting
D. The novels which I have just read are interesting.

TEST 6

Choose the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently.

1. A. stress B. relaxed C. event D. helpline
2. A. confident B. cognitive C. face D. creative

Choose the word that its main stress is placed differently from the others.

3. A. habit B. delighted C. music D. pressure
4. A. behave B. wonderful C. prepare D. tradition

Choose the word (A, B, C or D) that best completes the sentence.

5. _____ our school is small, it has strict rules.
A. Although B. If C. However D. So
6. She is a talented _____. Her songs are widely listened to by young people.
A. music B. musical C. musician D. musicale

7. The children ____ my home village used to go barefoot, even in winter. Now they all have shoes.
A. of B. in C. by D. with
8. We all wish there _____ a smart board in our classroom now.
A. were B. has been C. had been D. will be
9. Every country has its own customs and _____
A. event B. traditions C. story D. job
10. I used _____ to school but now I cycle to school.
A. walk B. walking C. to walking D. to walk
11. She has failed her driving test three times. She feels _____
A. depressed B. relaxed C. happy D. glad
12. The Internet is a vast _____ of computers, all connected together.
A. supply B. resource C. network D. discovery
13. The children started to _____ each part of the story.
A. act out B. go out C. get up D. come in

Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the underlined part that needs correction in each of the following questions

14. My teacher said I can talk to her about my project anytime.
A. can talk B. her C. about D. anytime
15. I prefer talking face to face to talking in the phone.
A. talking B. face to face C. to D. in
16. Minh is interested in basketball, but he isn't enough tall.
A. is B. in C. basketball D. enough tall

Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct response to each of the following exchanges.

17. "I have bought you a toy. Happy birthday to you!" " _____"
A. The same to you. B. What a lovely toy! Thanks.
C. Have a nice day! D. What a pity!
18. Mom: "Don't stay up late, or you'll be exhausted the next day." Mary: " _____"
A. No problem. B. No, I won't. C. Yes, I won't. D. You're welcome

Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the word(s) OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.

19. Come and join us at our local festival this weekend. I'm sure you won't regret it.
A. traditional B. cultural C. ritual D. international
20. My mother often tells me never to accept a lift from someone I've just met!
A. prevent B. refuse C. help D. deny

Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the word(s) CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.

21. The Internet is available in cities and towns, so we cannot easily get access to it in the countryside.
A. existing B. helpful C. traditional D. safe
22. She could be in an awful mood and refuse to answer my questions.
A. bad B. happy C. awesome D. different

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct word or phrase that best fits each of the numbered blanks.

Located (23) _____ Giao Thuy district, the Countryside Museum (24) _____ a popular attraction for visitors to Nam Dinh Province. The museum was established by a retired teacher,

Mrs. Khieu, while working as a teacher, she liked (25) _____ household utensils of residents in the Tonkin region. (26) _____ the 1990s, she has preserved objects that people, particular farmers, regularly used in the old days, so that younger generations can learn about these objects. Knowing Mrs. Khieu's good (27) _____, many people have brought her daily used subjects in rural areas, such as water buckets, different types of brooms, bronze and wooden trays and fishing baskets.

23. A. in B. on C. of D. at
 24. A. is B. has C. be D. are
 25. A. reminding B. selling C. collecting D. determining
 26. A. In B. Before C. Since D. For
 27. A. intentional B. intend C. intention D. intentionally

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

New York is called "the Big Apple". Maybe it is not exactly like an apple, it's certainly very big. There are too many people, that's the problem. The streets are always full of cars and trucks; you can never find a place to park.

Travelling around is never easy in the city. If you have enough money, you can take a taxi. New York cabs are yellow. They look all the same. But the drivers are very different. Some were born and raised in New York, but many are newcomers to the United States. A few drive slowly, but most go very fast. Cab driving is a difficult job. It can be dangerous, too. Thieves often try to steal the drivers' money. Drivers sometimes get hurt.

If you don't want to take a taxi, you can go by bus or you can take the subway. The subway is quick and it's cheap, but some of its parts are old and dirty. Lights don't always work and there are often fires on the track. On some **subway** lines, there are new, clean and silver trains. But you can't see the color of the old trains easily. There is too much dirt and too much graffiti, inside and outside.

28. **You may find it hard to see _____.**
 A. new, clean and silver trains B. drivers
 C. the color of the old trains D. newcomers
29. What does "a cab" mean?
 A. truck B. a plane C. a taxi D. a bus
30. **What is the problem in New York?**
 A. It looked like an apple B. It has too many apples.
 C. It is too long D. It is too crowded.
31. Cab drivers in New York _____.
 A. can be dangerous B. look the same
 C. can be attacked by thieves D. were all born in New York
32. The word "**subway**" can be replaced by _____.
 A. platform B. light bulb C. Underground D. station

Choose the second sentence which has the same meaning as that of the root one.

33. Ian didn't know how to water-ski, but he tried to do it.
 A. Although Ian tried hard, he didn't know how to water-ski.
 B. Although Ian didn't know how to water-ski, he tried to do it.
 C. Ian didn't water-ski because he didn't know how to.
 D. Ian didn't try to water -ski because he didn't know how to do it.
34. The picnic was cancelled because of the heavy rain.
 A. If it hadn't rained so heavily, the picnic wouldn't be cancelled.
 B. If it hadn't rained, the picnic would have been cancelled.

- C. But for the heavy rain, the picnic wouldn't be cancelled.
- D. But for the heavy rain, the picnic wouldn't have been cancelled.

35. "If I were you, I would take a break," Tom said to Daisy.

- A. Tom suggested not taking a break.
- B. Tom wanted to take a break with Daisy.
- C. Tom advised Daisy to take a break.
- D. Tom wanted to take a break, and so did Daisy.

36. I wish I didn't have to get up early tomorrow.

- A. It's my wish to get up early tomorrow.
- B. I have to get up early tomorrow.
- C. Getting up early tomorrow is not necessary.
- D. I don't have to get up early tomorrow.

Mark letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the best sentence that can be made from the cues given.

37. engine/ car/ need/ clean/ once/ month/.

- A. The engine of the car needs cleaning once a month.
- B. The engine for the car need to clean once a month.
- C. The engine with the car needs to be cleaned once a month.
- D. The engine of the car needs to clean once a month.

38. I/ not/ know/ what/ do/ make/ mother/ happy/.

- A. I don't know what doing to make my mother happy.
- B. I don't know what to doing make my mother happy.
- C. I not know what do to make mother happy
- D. I don't know what to do to make my mother happy.

39. Nobody/ can/ deny/ that/ she/ talent/ arts/.

- A. Nobody can deny that she talented of arts.
- B. Nobody can deny that she's talent at arts.
- C. Nobody can deny that she's talented with arts.
- D. Nobody can deny that she's talented at arts.

40. many/ place/ the world/,/ people/ used/ dye/ cloth/ nature/ material/.

- A. In many places in the world, people used to dye cloth with nature materials.
- B. In many places in the world, people used to dyeing cloth by natural materials.
- C. In many places in the world, people used to dye cloth with natural materials.
- D. In many places in the world, people used dyeing cloth by natural materials.

TEST 7

Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the word whose underlined part differs from the other three in pronunciation in each of the following questions.

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. A. wander <u>e</u> d | B. spoil <u>e</u> d | C. mention <u>e</u> d | D. publish <u>e</u> d |
| 2. A. strip <u>e</u> s | B. picnic <u>s</u> | C. benefit <u>s</u> | D. relat <u>i</u> ves |
| 3. A. flo <u>o</u> d | B. typhoo <u>n</u> | C. ro <u>o</u> f | D. moo <u>n</u> |
| 4. A. stea <u>k</u> | B. br <u>e</u> ad | C. br <u>e</u> ak | D. gr <u>e</u> at |
| 5. A. ch <u>a</u> mpion | B. ch <u>i</u> ldren | C. ch <u>e</u> mist | D. ch <u>o</u> colate |

Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

6. No one in the group is against the plan, _____?
- | | | | |
|-------------|-------------|----------|----------------|
| A. isn't it | B. are they | C. is he | D. aren't they |
|-------------|-------------|----------|----------------|
7. Mrs Lan claimed that she had seen _____ UFO in the garden near her house
- | | | | |
|------|--------|-------|-------------------|
| A. a | B. The | C. an | D. Ø (no article) |
|------|--------|-------|-------------------|
8. He is keen _____ reading detective novels.
- | | | | |
|--------|-------|-------|---------|
| A. for | B. in | C. on | D. with |
|--------|-------|-------|---------|
9. Her parents decided _____ energy-saving bulbs to save electricity.
- | | | | |
|--------|---------|----------|-----------|
| A. use | B. used | C. using | D. to use |
|--------|---------|----------|-----------|
10. I hate _____ to classical music.
- | | | | |
|--------------|--------------|------------|-----------|
| A. listening | B. to listen | C. listens | D. listen |
|--------------|--------------|------------|-----------|
11. Last night while I _____ my homework, the lights went out.
- | | | | |
|--------------|---------------|--------|-------|
| A. was doing | B. were doing | C. did | D. do |
|--------------|---------------|--------|-------|
12. Lan _____ learning English a few years ago.
- | | | | |
|----------|---------------|----------|----------------------|
| A. begin | B. will begin | C. began | D. is going to begin |
|----------|---------------|----------|----------------------|
13. If people use public transport, there _____ less pollution.
- | | | | |
|------------|-------|--------|--------|
| A. will be | B. is | C. are | D. was |
|------------|-------|--------|--------|
14. The film was so _____ that I left before ending.
- | | | | |
|------------|-------------|----------|-----------|
| A. excited | B. exciting | C. bored | D. boring |
|------------|-------------|----------|-----------|
15. _____ she was sick, she still went to school yesterday .
- | | | | |
|----------------|-------------|------------|------------|
| A. In spite of | B. Although | C. Despite | D. Because |
|----------------|-------------|------------|------------|
16. We didn't go camping _____ the bad weather.
- | | | | |
|----------|----------------|---------------|------------|
| A. since | B. in spite of | C. because of | D. because |
|----------|----------------|---------------|------------|
17. Yesterday he ___ finish his homework because he was very tired.
- | | | | |
|----------|----------|-------------|------------|
| A. could | B. can't | C. couldn't | D. mustn't |
|----------|----------|-------------|------------|
18. The church _____ since last year.
- | | | | |
|-------------------|-------------|--------------|----------|
| A. has been built | B. is built | C. was built | D. built |
|-------------------|-------------|--------------|----------|
19. You can _____ new words in the dictionary over there.
- | | | | |
|-------------|---------------|-------------|------------|
| A. look for | B. look after | C. look out | D. look up |
|-------------|---------------|-------------|------------|
20. Her mother _____ than my mother.
- | | | | |
|--------------|-----------|------------------|---------|
| A. more busy | B. busier | C. the most busy | D. busy |
|--------------|-----------|------------------|---------|
21. A funnel-shaped storm passing overland below a thunderstorm is called a _____
- | | | | |
|------------|--------------|------------|------------|
| A. tornado | B. hurricane | C. typhoon | D. tsunami |
|------------|--------------|------------|------------|
22. In the 18th century Jean cloth was made completely from _____.

- A. rubber B. leather C. cotton D. nylon
23. Wearing uniforms helps students feel _____ in many ways.
A. the same B. different C. unequal D. equal
24. Should all motorcyclists be _____ to wear helmets?
A. interested B. dangerous C. impressed D. compulsory
25. We have thirty students, most of _____ speak English well
A. who B. whom C. whose D. that
26. I wish you _____ here to help me now
A. Are B. were C. would be D. will be

Mark the letter A, B C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word(s) CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.

27. Young children do not fully know that many household objects are dangerous.
A. impossible B. inexpensive C. unsure D. unsafe
28. Your failure is the consequence of not studying hard enough for the exam.
A. cause B. motive C. result D. status

Mark the letter A, B C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word(s) OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.

29. Don't forget to turn off the light before you leave for work.
A. learn B. fail C. remember D. miss
30. Tung passed the entrance examination to a very famous secondary school.
A. failed B. taken C. done D. sit

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that best completes each of the following exchanges

31. Lan and Chi are having dinner at Lan's house.
Lan: " _____ " Chi: "No, thank you, that'll be all."
A. What would you like? B. It's very kind of you to help me.
C. Would you like something else? D. What kind of food do you like?

32. Tom and Sue are talking about their last night activities.
Tom: "Didn't you go to the cinema last night?" Sue: " _____."
A. Yes, I lost the ticket B. No, it was too cold to go out
C. OK. That was a good idea D. Yes, I stayed at home

Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the underlined part that needs correct in each of the following questions.

33. Mr. Brown enjoys festivals in Vietnam despite he doesn't understand Vietnamese culture very much.
A. enjoys B. in Vietnam C. despite D. Vietnamese
34. Traditionally ,the ao dai frequently wore by both men and women.
A. Traditionally B. frequently wore C. both D. and
35. Don't drive into that street. It is an one-way street.
A. Don't B. into C. It D. an

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the words that in the blanks

Nowadays more and more people are moving to live in the cities because of the facilities that they find there. Many people prefer living in cities (36) _____ the opportunities of jobs, market places, big houses and buildings including schools and hospitals. But as the population in the city increases, the consumption of cars, raw materials and others increases too. All this contributes to the(37)_____ of the city and increases the size of the problems faced by individuals. Our

problems (38)_____ the city contribute to the destruction of the city and the spread of corruption. Also, these problems are creating an atmosphere of discomfort and the inability of the individual to adapt and live in peace in his home town. However, there (39) _____ many solutions (40) _____ can be used and applied to contribute to reducing the number of problems, such as increasing the number of police members, providing employment opportunities and spreading awareness among members of the society.

36. A. because of B. because C. in spite of D. with
 37. A. polluted B. polluting C. pollution D. pollutants
 38. A. in B. at C. on D. by
 39. A. has been B. is C. was D. are
 40. A. what B. that C. this D. whether

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, D, on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

Solar energy is a long lasting source of energy which can be used almost anywhere. To generate solar energy, we only need solar cells and the sun! Solar cells can easily be installed on house roofs, so no new space is needed and each user can quietly generate their own energy. Compared to other renewable sources, they also possess many advantages. Wind and water power rely on turbines which are noisy, expensive and easy to break down. Solar cells are totally silent and non-polluting. As they have no moving parts, they require little maintenance and have a long lifetime. However, solar energy also has some disadvantages. We can only generate solar energy during daytime because the system depends on sunlight. Besides, solar cells require large area to work effectively. The main disadvantage of solar energy is that it costs about twice as much as traditional sources such as coal, oil, and gas. This is because solar cells are expensive. Scientists are hoping that the costs of solar cells will reduce as more and more people see the advantages of this environmentally friendly source of energy.

41. What does the passage primarily discuss?
 A. Advantages and disadvantages of solar energy.
 B. The cost of solar energy.
 C. Solar energy's advantages over other sources of energy.
 D. Solar energy as an alternative for fossil fuels.
42. What does the word **they** in line 4 refer to?
 A. solar energy users. B. advantages.
 C. solar cells. D. other renewable resources.
43. What is NOT mentioned as an advantage of solar cells?
 A. They operate quietly. B. They require little maintenance.
 C. They cost little to produce. D. They are non-polluting.
44. What does the word **advantages** in line 12 mean ?
 A. resources B. benefits C. friendly D. very bad.
45. Which of the following is the main disadvantage of solar energy mentioned in the passage?
 A. It is unfriendly to the environment. B. Solar cells require large areas to operate.
 C. It depends on sunlight. D. It is expensive.

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that is closest in meaning to each of the following questions

46. They built this house in 2015.
 A. This house was built in 2015. B. This house built in 2015.
 C. This house was building in 2015. D. This house were built in 2015.
47. "Do you watch TV every morning?" The teacher asked Mark.

- A. The teacher asked Mark to watch TV every morning.
- B. The teacher asked Mark if he watched TV every morning.
- C. The teacher asked Mark for TV every morning.
- D. The teacher asked Mark if he would watch TV every morning.

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that best combines each pair of sentences in the following questions

48. You feel unhealthy because you don't take any exercise.
- A. If you take more exercise, you will feel healthier.
 - B. If you were healthier, you would take more exercise.
 - C. If you took more exercise, you would feel healthier.
 - D. If you don't take any exercise, you will feel unhealthy.
49. My parents live in the house. The house is opposite my house.
- A. My parents live in the house it is opposite my house.
 - B. My parents live in the house which opposite my house.
 - C. My parents live in the house which is opposite my house.
 - D. My parents live in the house which was opposite my house.
50. Mr. Ba is very old. He has to work hard eight hours a day.
- A. Mr. Ba is very old, so he has to work hard eight hours a day.
 - B. Mr. Ba is very old. Therefore, he has to work hard eight hours a day.
 - C. Mr. Ba is very old. Because he has to work hard eight hours a day.
 - D. Mr. Ba is very old. However, he has to work hard eight hours a day.

TEST 8

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word whose underlined part differs from the other three in pronunciation in each of the following questions.

- | | | | |
|----------------------|--------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. <u>hear</u> | B. <u>dream</u> | C. <u>leave</u> | D. <u>speak</u> |
| 2. A. <u>tide</u> | B. <u>sight</u> | C. <u>evidence</u> | D. <u>flight</u> |
| 3. A. <u>mention</u> | B. <u>question</u> | C. <u>action</u> | D. <u>education</u> |
| 4. A. <u>traces</u> | B. <u>houses</u> | C. <u>gemstones</u> | D. <u>buses</u> |
| 5. A. <u>saved</u> | B. <u>helped</u> | C. <u>looked</u> | D. <u>washed</u> |

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

6. Your brother works for a foreign company, _____?
- A. didn't he
 - B. hasn't he
 - C. doesn't he
 - D. isn't he
7. Do you think English is _____ important subject?
- A. a
 - B. an
 - C. the
 - D. no article
8. You will take an exam _____ June 8th.
- A. from
 - B. at
 - C. in
 - D. on
9. She hates _____ her parents for money.
- A. to ask
 - B. asked
 - C. asking
 - D. to asking
10. When it started to rain yesterday, we _____ home from school.
- A. were walking
 - B. went
 - C. are walking
 - D. was walking
11. He _____ me since he moved to Dubai.
- A. didn't phoned
 - B. won't phoned
 - C. doesn't phoned
 - D. hasn't phoned
12. If the sea level _____, some countries will disappear.

- A. rose B. rise C. rises D. had risen
13. Tom was very lazy, but he got the highest mark in the exam. I think it was a _____ result.
A. surprise B. surprising C. surprised D. surprisingly
14. Mai rarely gets good marks _____ she studies very hard.
A. and B. because C. although D. so
15. I would like to go to the circus. _____, I have to finish my homework.
A. Therefore B. So C. Because D. However
16. She is very short. She wishes she _____ 10 centimeters taller.
A. would be B. were C. will be D. is
17. I don't know what there is in the box. I guess it _____ be an eraser.
A. ought B. can C. must D. might
18. This newspaper _____ everyday.
A. is publishing B. publishes C. published D. is published
19. You have a bad cough, you had better _____ smoking.
A. give up B. go on C. put off D. turn on
20. Would you like _____ part in the charity program this summer?
A. took B. taking C. to take D. take
21. Detective books are _____ than science fiction ones.
A. as interesting B. more interesting C. most interesting D. much interesting
22. For me, the Internet is a _____ invention of modern life.
A. wonder B. wondering C. wonderful D. wonderfully
23. I think you should _____ a short rest after studying for such a long time.
A. give B. receive C. take D. do
24. I suggest taking a shower instead of a bath to save _____.
A. water B. electricity C. gas D. solar energy
25. You should _____ an ordinary 100-watt light bulb with an energy-saving bulb.
A. consume B. select C. change D. replace
26. The girl _____ sits next to me in class speak English very well.
A. whom B. which C. whose D. who

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word(s) CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.

27. Most of earthquakes occur around the Pacific Rim, which is known as the 'Ring of Fire'.
A. carry out B. take place C. go off D. put on
28. Nobody can deny the benefits of the Internet in our life.
A. advantages B. profits C. disadvantages D. harm

Choose the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the word(s) OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following sentences.

29. Hoa forgot to submit her homework to the teacher.
A. hoped B. expected C. promised D. remembered
30. Workers liked wearing jeans because the material was very strong.
A. long B. beautiful C. weak D. healthy

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that best completes each of the following exchanges.

31. The students are discussing a plan to protect the environment.
- **Jack:** "How about planting more trees in the school yard?" - **Bill:** " _____."
A. I'm afraid you're right B. I'm sorry. It's a good idea.
C. Sorry. That sounds good. D. Great! Let's do that.

32. Two friends are talking to each other.

- Lan: "What a beautiful dress you have!" - Hoa: " _____."

A. It's very nice of you to say so.

B. It's my pleasure

C. That's a good idea.

D. How come?

Read the passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

Large forests are important to us in many ways. They give us wood for building and heating. They are homes for many kinds of plants and animals. And for many city people, forests are places to go for a vacation. People can learn about nature here. They can breathe fresh air and sleep in a quiet place. But there is one more reason why forests are important for everyone. The leaves on the trees in a forest help clean the air. Dirty air is a problem in many parts of the world. Without our forests, this problem might be much worse. Protecting forests is important for everyone. People should plant more new trees. **They** also help improve our environment.

33. What is the topic of the passage?

A. Large forests

B. New forests

C. Taking vacation

D. The importance of forests

34. What is a problem in many parts of the world?

A. Dirty air

B. Clean air

C. Our forests

D. The leaves on the trees in a forest

35. What helps clean the air?

A. Animals

B. Pollution

C. Tree leaves

D. City people

36. The word "**They**" in the last sentence refers to _____.

A. protecting

B. animals

C. people

D. new forests

37. Which of the following is NOT true?

A. Forests give us wood for building.

B. Forests are plants & animals' houses.

C. Forests are places that are not good for every one.

D. Forests are places to go for a vacation.

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct word or phrasal that best fits each of the numbered blanks.

Few people now question the reality of global warming and its effects on the world's climate. Many scientists put the blame for recent (38)_____ disasters on the increase in the world's temperatures and are convinced that, more than ever before, the Earth is at risk from the forces of the wind, rain (39) _____ sun. (40)_____ to them, global warming is making extreme weather events, such as hurricanes and droughts, even more severe and causing sea levels all around the world to rise.

Environmental groups are putting pressure on government to take action to reduce the amount of carbon dioxide (41)_____ is given off by factories and power plants. They are in favor of more money being spent (42)_____ research into solar, wind and wave energy devices, which could then replace existing power stations.

38. A. national

B. nature

C. nation

D. natural

39. A. or

B. and

C. but

D. because

40. A. Depending

B. Concerning

C. Following

D. According

41. A. which

B. who

C. whose

D. where

42. A. on

B. at

C. for

D. in

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the underlined part that needs correction in each of the following questions.

43. I think maths are the most difficult subject.
- A. think B. are C. the most D. subject
44. Hoa lives near the school, so she walks usually to school in the morning.
- A. lives B. the school C. walks usually D. in the morning
45. Playing football, swimming and do karate are my son's favorite sports.
- A. Playing football B. do karate C. are D. favorite sports

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that is closest in meaning to each of the following questions.

46. They are building a pagoda in our neighborhood at the moment.
- A. A pagoda is built in our neighborhood at the moment.
 B. A pagoda is being built in our neighborhood at the moment.
 C. A pagoda was being built in our neighborhood at the moment.
 D. A pagoda has been building in our neighborhood at the moment.
47. "You had better buy some canned food before a typhoon" Mrs. Ha said to me.
- A. Mrs. Ha wanted to buy some canned food before a typhoon.
 B. Mrs. Ha asked me to buy some canned food before a typhoon.
 C. Mrs. Ha told me not to buy some canned food before a typhoon.
 D. Mrs. Ha advised me to buy some canned food before a typhoon.

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that best combines each pair of sentences in the following questions.

48. I have just bought a smart phone. It was produced in Viet Nam.
- A. I have just bought a smart phone which was produced in Viet Nam.
 B. I have just bought a smart phone where was produced in Viet Nam.
 C. I have just bought a smart phone whose was produced in Viet Nam.
 D. I have just bought a smart phone who was produced in Viet Nam.
49. He doesn't have enough experience. He can't do that work.
- A. If he has enough experience, he can do that work.
 B. If he didn't have enough experience, he could do that work.
 C. If he had enough experience, he could do that work.
 D. If he had enough experience, he couldn't do that work.
50. It snowed heavily. The football match still took place.
- A. Although it snowed heavily, but the football match still took place.
 B. In spite of the heavy snow, the football match still took place.
 C. Despite it snowed heavily, the football match still took place.
 D. Because it snow heavily, the football match still took place.

TEST 9

I. Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the word whose underlined part differs from the other three in pronunciation in each of the following questions.

1. A. proofs B. books C. points D. days
2. A. worked B. stopped C. forced D. wanted
3. A. dead B. scream C. meat D. heat
4. A. choice B. achieve C. each D. chemistry
5. A. ride B. written C. driving D. shine

II. Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions

6. She's finished the course, _____?
A. isn't she B. doesn't she C. didn't she D. hasn't she
7. He has been _____ M.C for two years.
A. a B. the C. an D. no article
8. If it's raining tomorrow, we shall have to put _____ the match till Sunday.
A. off B. away C. in D. on
9. I'm worried _____ my final exam in statistics.
A. about falling B. to fall C. with falling D. to fallure
10. She _____ the house last weekend
A. was cleaning B. cleans C. clean D. cleaned
11. They _____ stamps and coins when they were young.
A. used to collect B. are used to collecting
C. used to collecting D. are used to collect
12. What would you do if you _____ a million pounds?
A. won B. win C. will win D. had won
13. Nam's parents are very _____ with his success
A. please B. pleasant C. pleasing D. pleased
14. She was tired _____ her long walk.
A. because B. since C. as D. because of
15. Nga is hungry _____ she hasn't eaten all day.
A. since B. because of C. though D. and
16. The weather is not fine today so they can't go on a picnic. They wish it _____ fine
A. be B. was C. were D. is
17. Leave early so that you _____ miss the bus.
A. didn't B. won't C. shouldn't D. mustn't
18. The traffic light is red. If you didn't stop, you _____.
A. would be fined B. would fined C. would fine D. will be fined
19. It's dark here, please _____ all the lights.
A. turn on B. get on C. go on D. keep on
20. Please ask the restaurant receptionist _____ in the no smoking area.
A. don't smoke B. not to smoke C. not smoking D. don't to smoke
21. Of the four dresses, which is _____ expensive?
A. the best B. the most C. the more D. the greater
22. As an _____, Mr. Pike is very worried about the increasing of juvenile delinquency.
A. educate B. education C. educator D. educative
23. Coal, oil, gas...are _____ resources.
A. nature B. natural C. naturally D. unnaturally
24. On Passover's night, Jewish families eat a special _____ called the Seder.
A. meal B. lunch C. dinner D. breakfast
25. On this _____, mother usually receives cards, flowers and gifts from her husband and children.
A. chance B. occasion C. opportunity D. date
26. The boy to _____ I lent my money is poor.
A. who B. whom C. which D. that

Mark the letter A,B,C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word(s) CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.

27. They felt refreshed after their trip to Da Lat.

- A. happy B. relaxed C. pleased D. glad

28. Unless we try to save natural resources, they will **run out** soon.

- A. end B. last forever C. reduce D. exist

Mark the letter A,B,C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word(s) OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.

29. It took Peter three hours to **open** the doors.

- A. close B. shut C. pull D. fix

30. He is the most **generous** man I've ever met

- A. mean B. kind C. friendly D. helpful

Mark the letter A,B,C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that best completes each of the following exchanges.

31. Thanh and Ba are talking about Thanh's exam.

Thanh: " I've passed my exam."

Ba: " _____ "

- A. Good luck. B. It's nice of you to say so.
C. That's a good idea. D. Congratulations!

32. Mr Ba wants to invite Miss Ha to have dinner with him.

Mr Ba: " Would you like to have dinner with me?" Miss Ha: " _____ "

- A. Yes, I'd love to B. I'm very happy C. Yes, It is D. Yes, so do I

Read the passage and mark the letter A,B,C or D on you answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

Most of the joggers who are overweight are reasonable for talking about, worrying about, and obsessing with their weight. Since many people start jogging to lose weight (perhaps you're one of them) it is not surprising that body size is important. More and more people are on a diet, 50% of the women and close to 25% of the men in the US are watching what they eat. Body weight is the second most talked among joggers - heart disease and high blood pressure are the first! There are many factors that affect your weight. They include: body type, diet, exercise level, sex and age. What may be an "ideal" weight for you at the age of 27 may not be ideal when you're 54. And your ideal weight will probably be different during racing season when you're in a specific training phase.

33. What are most of joggers who are overweight worried about?

- A. their weight B. their height C. their jogging D. the distance

34. To many people, _____

- A. body size is not a problem B. body size is very important
C. they do not care about their body size D. jogging is a waste of time

35. In the US, _____.

- A. nobody is on a diet B. 50% women are on a diet
C. obesity is appreciate D. 75% men are on a diet

36. What are the most talked among the joggers?

- A. body size B. lung cancer
C. died D. heart disease and high blood pressure

37. There are many factors that affect your weight. They are _____

- A. body type, diet, exercise level, sex and age B. high blood pressure, sex and age
C. heart disease and high blood pressure D. body type and heart disease

Read the passage and mark the letter A,B,C or D on you answer sheet to indicate the correct word or phrase that best fits each of the numbered blanks.

Dear sir / Madam,

I am writing to you about the short stop of your trucks around my house on their way to the north.

(38)_____ the trucks of your company have a short break on the streets around my (39)_____, the drivers have left lots of garbage (40)_____ the ground after their refreshment. When the trucks leave the place, the ground is covered with trash, (41)_____ a few minutes later there is smell and flies.

I would suggest that your company should tell your drivers to clear up all the trash on the ground before leaving. I look forward to hearing from you and (42)_____good response from your company.

Your faithfully,

Pham Nguyen.

38. A. What B. Where C. When D. If
39. A. village B. house C. town D. city
40. A. at B. of C. in D. on
41. A. if B. but C. because D. and
42. A. see B. to see C. seeing D. to seeing

Mark the letter A,B,C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the underlined part that needs correction in each of the following questions.

43. If he make a mistake, will he feel sorry for it?
A. make B. will C. feel D. for
44. I saw the men, the women and the cattle which went to the field.
A. the men, the women B. the cattle
C. Which D. went to
45. He never allows us to smoke and eating in this room.
A. never B. allows C. to smoke D. eating

Mark the letter A,B,C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the underlined part that needs correction in each of the following questions.

46. They built the church two hundred years ago.
A. The church was built for two hundred years ago.
B. The church was built two hundred years ago.
C. The church was building for two hundred years ago.
D. The church was being built for two hundred years ago.
47. Tom said: "I have already had breakfast, so I am not hungry."
A. Tom said he had already had breakfast, so he is not hungry.
B. Tom said he has already had breakfast, so he is not hungry.
C. Tom said he has already had breakfast, so he was not hungry.
D. Tom said he had already had breakfast, so he was not hungry.

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that best combines each pair of sentences in the following questions.

48. **The man is my closest friend. You saw him on TV last night.**
A. The man whose you saw on TV last night is my closest friend.
B. The man whom you saw on TV last night is my closest friend.
C. The man when you saw on TV last night is my closest friend.
D. The man seeing you on TV last night is my closest friend.
49. **Unless you keep your feet dry, you will catch a cold.**
A. You won't catch a cold even if you don't keep your feet dry.
B. You will catch a cold if you don't keep your feet dry.

- C. You will catch a cold if you keep your feet dry.
- D. Unless you keep your feet wet, you won't catch a cold.

50. Despite feeling cold, we kept walking.

- A. In spite of we felt cold, we kept walking.
- B. Although we felt cold, we kept walking.
- C. However cold we felt, but we kept walking.
- D. However we felt cold, we kept walking.